Table of Contents

Introduction 4

Instrument Cluster 12

Warning lights and chimes 12
Gauges 20

Entertainment Systems 24

How to get going 24
AM/FM stereo with CD 28
AM/FM stereo with in-dash six CD 36
Auxiliary input jack (Line in) 44
USB port 46
Satellite radio information 49
Family entertainment system 52
Navigation system 81
SYNC 81

Climate Controls 82

Manual heating and air conditioning 82
Automatic temperature control 84
Auxiliary passenger climate control 87
Rear window defroster 87

Lights 89

Driver Controls 99

Windshield wiper/washer control 99
Steering wheel adjustment 100
Power windows 104
Mirrors 106
Speed control 109
Moon roof 114
Message center 119

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Table of Contents

Locks and Security	**151**
Keys	151
Locks	151
Anti-theft system	157
Seating and Safety Restraints	**167**
Seating	167
Safety restraints	181
Airbags	196
Child restraints	210
Tires, Wheels and Loading	**226**
Tire information	228
Tire inflation	230
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	243
Vehicle loading	248
Trailer towing	255
Recreational towing	261
Driving	**263**
Starting	263
Brakes	268
Traction Control™/AdvanceTrac®	270
Transmission operation	276
Roadside Emergencies	**298**
Getting roadside assistance	298
Hazard flasher switch	300
Fuel pump shut-off switch	300
Fuses and relays	301
Changing tires	309
Lug nut torque	319
Jump starting	320
Wrecker towing	326

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Table of Contents

Customer Assistance 328

Reporting safety defects (U.S. only) 334
Reporting safety defects (Canada only) 335

Cleaning 336

Maintenance and Specifications 344

Engine compartment 346
Engine oil 350
Battery 355
Engine coolant 357
Fuel information 364
Air filter(s) 379
Part numbers 380
Maintenance product specifications and capacities 381
Engine data 385

Accessories 388

Index 390

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2007 Ford Motor Company

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING: Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

PERCHLORATE MATERIAL

Certain components of this vehicle such as airbag modules, seat belt pretensioners, and button cell batteries may contain Perchlorate Material – Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations on acquiring your new Ford. Please take the time to get well acquainted with your vehicle by reading this handbook. The more you know and understand about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will derive from driving it.

For more information on Ford Motor Company and its products visit the following website:

- In the United States: www.ford.com
- In Canada: www.ford.ca
- In Australia: www.ford.com.au
- In Mexico: www.ford.com.mx

Additional owner information is given in separate publications.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Introduction

This *Owner's Guide* describes every option and model variant available and therefore some of the items covered may not apply to your particular vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles it may describe options before they are generally available.

Remember to pass on this *Owner's Guide* when reselling the vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

Fuel pump shut-off switch: In the event of an accident the safety switch will automatically cut off the fuel supply to the engine. The switch can also be activated through sudden vibration (e.g. collision when parking). To reset the switch, refer to the *Fuel pump shut-off switch* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION

Warning symbols in this guide

How can you reduce the risk of personal injury to yourself or others? In this guide, answers to such questions are contained in comments highlighted by the warning triangle symbol. These comments should be read and observed.

Warning symbols on your vehicle

When you see this symbol, it is imperative that you consult the relevant section of this guide before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Introduction

Protecting the environment

We must all play our part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps towards this aim. Information in this respect is highlighted in this guide with the tree symbol.

BREAKING-IN YOUR VEHICLE

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed frequently in order to give the moving parts a chance to break in.

Drive your new vehicle at least 1,000 miles (1,600 km) before towing a trailer. For more detailed information about towing a trailer, refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on oil usage.

SPECIAL NOTICES

New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the *Warranty Guide* that is provided to you along with your *Owner's Guide*.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Special instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

Please read the section *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access vehicle diagnostic information through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle.

Event Data Recording

Other modules in your vehicle — event data recorders — are capable of collecting and storing data during a crash or near crash event. The recorded information may assist in the investigation of such an event. The modules may record information about both the vehicle and the occupants, potentially including information such as:

- how various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled;
- how far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal;
- how fast the vehicle was traveling; and
- where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Introduction

To access this information, special equipment must be directly connected to the recording modules. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

Notice to owners of pickup trucks and utility type vehicles

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this *Owner's Guide* carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Notice to owners with 20" wheels and tires

Your vehicle is not designed to be operated off road. The 20" wheels and tires are for on-road use only

Note: When first driving the vehicle after it has been parked for a period of time, you may experience a temporary ride disturbance. This is a characteristic of the tires and should be no reason for concern. The condition should correct itself within 5-15 miles (8-25 km) of driving. If the disturbance persists, have the tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

With these type of tires it is important that correct tire pressure is maintained. Correct tire pressure is important to payload and proper ride and handling attributes. Check your vehicle's Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label for the proper tire pressure levels.

Using your vehicle with a snowplow

Do not use this vehicle for snowplowing.

Your vehicle is not equipped with a snowplowing package.

Using your vehicle as an ambulance

Do not use this vehicle as an ambulance.

Your vehicle is not equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cell phone use

The use of Mobile Communications Equipment has become increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, drivers must not compromise their own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile Communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile Communication Equipment includes, but is not limited to cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, in-vehicle communications systems, telematics devices and portable two-way radios.

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The drivers primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Export unique (Non–United States/Canada) vehicle specific information

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the ones that are described in this *Owner's Guide*. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This *Owner's Guide* is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Guide for all other required information and warnings.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Introduction

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Safety Alert		See Owner's Guide	
Fasten Safety Belt		Airbag - Front	
Airbag - Side		Child Seat Lower Anchor	
Child Seat Tether Anchor		Brake System	
Anti-Lock Brake System		Parking Brake System	
Brake Fluid - Non-Petroleum Based		Parking Aid System	
Stability Control System		Speed Control	
Master Lighting Switch		Hazard Warning Flasher	
Fog Lamps-Front		Fuse Compartment	
Fuel Pump Reset		Windshield Wash/Wipe	
Windshield Defrost/Demist		Rear Window Defrost/Demist	

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle Symbol Glossary

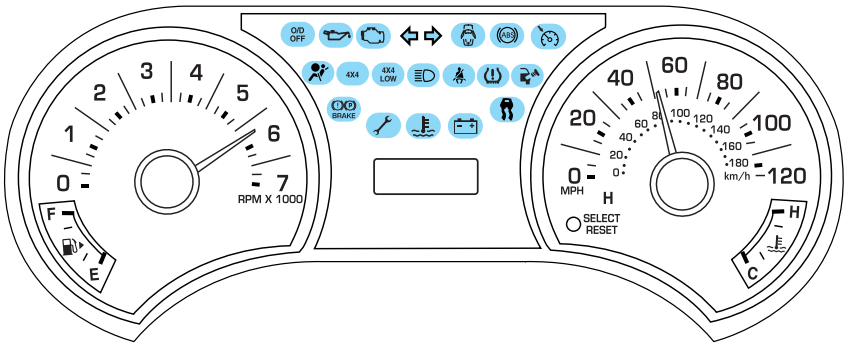
Power Windows Front/Rear		Power Window Lockout	
Child Safety Door Lock/Unlock		Interior Luggage Compartment Release	
Panic Alarm		Engine Oil	
Engine Coolant		Engine Coolant Temperature	
Do Not Open When Hot		Battery	
Avoid Smoking, Flames, or Sparks		Battery Acid	
Explosive Gas		Fan Warning	
Power Steering Fluid		Maintain Correct Fluid Level	
Service Engine Soon		Engine Air Filter	
Passenger Compartment Air Filter		Jack	
Check Fuel Cap		Low Tire Pressure Warning	

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

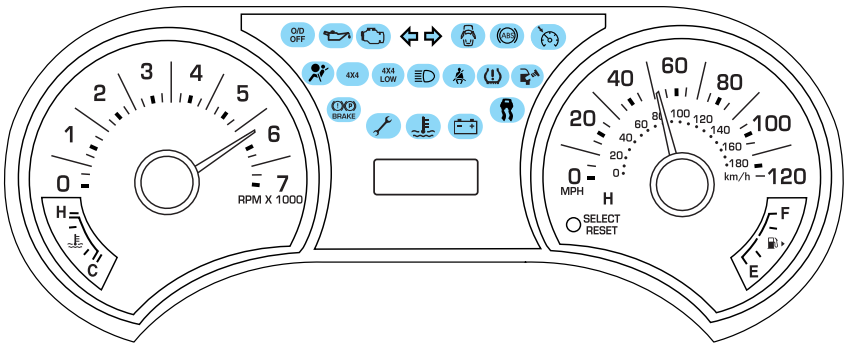
Instrument Cluster

WARNING LIGHTS AND CHIMES

Standard instrument cluster



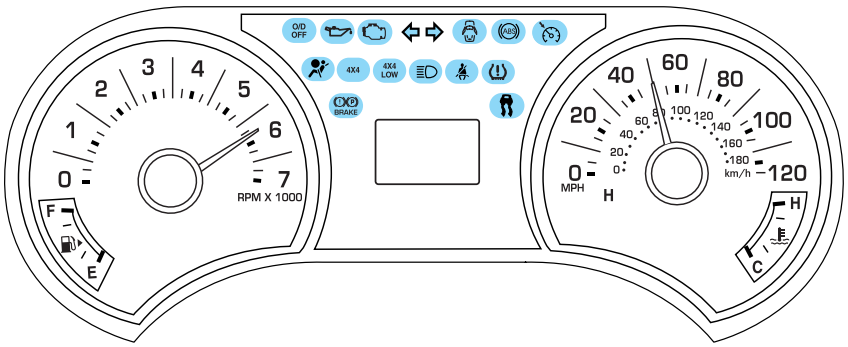
Type A



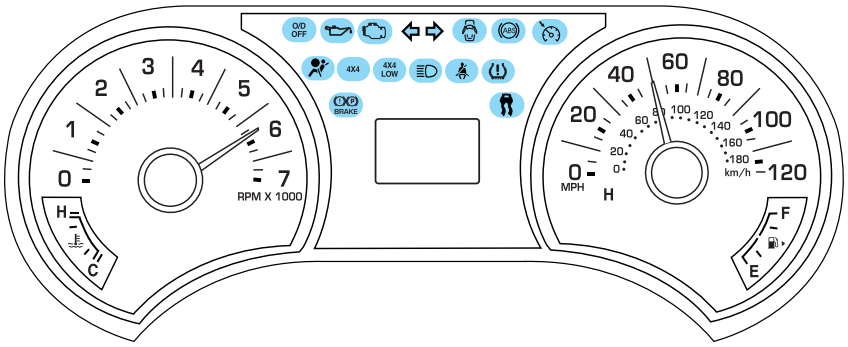
Type B

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Optional instrument cluster



Type A



Type B

Warning lights and gauges can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause expensive repairs. A warning light may illuminate when a problem exists with one of your vehicle's functions. Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure the bulb works. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, refer to the respective system warning light for additional information.

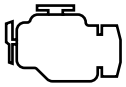
Note: Some warning lights will display in the message center as words and function the same as the warning light.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Cluster

Note: Depending on which options your vehicle has, some indicators may not be present in your vehicle.

Service engine soon: The *Service engine soon* indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned to the ON position to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing. Normally, the ″Service engine soon″ light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the ″Service engine soon″ light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See the *Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



Solid illumination after the engine is started indicates the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II) has detected a malfunction. Refer to *On board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

If the light remains ON while driving, the temperature of the engine may be too high, refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

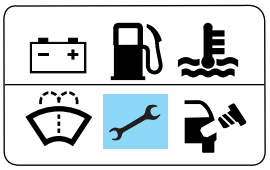
Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire.

Powertrain malfunction indicator: Illuminates when a powertrain , a 4x4 or a AWD fault has been detected. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

- Standard instrument cluster

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Optional instrument cluster



Brake system warning light: To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will momentarily illuminate when the ignition is turned to the ON position when the engine is not running, or in a position between ON and START, or by applying the parking brake when the ignition is turned to the ON position. If the brake system warning light does not illuminate at this time, seek service immediately from your authorized dealer. Illumination after releasing the parking brake indicates low brake fluid level and the brake system should be inspected immediately by your authorized dealer.

Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

Anti-lock brake system: If the ABS light stays illuminated or continues to flash, a malfunction has been detected, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.

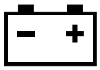
Airbag readiness: If this light fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned to ON, continues to flash or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. A chime will also sound when a malfunction in the supplemental restraint system has been detected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

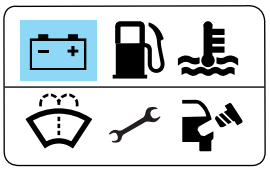
Safety belt: Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A Belt-Minder® chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. Refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter to activate/deactivate the Belt-Minder® chime feature.

Charging system: Illuminates when the battery is not charging properly.

- Standard instrument cluster



- Optional instrument cluster



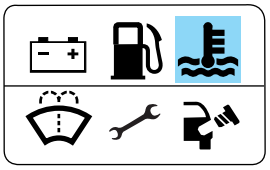
Engine oil pressure: Illuminates when the oil pressure falls below the normal range. Check the oil level and add oil if needed. Refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

If the light remains ON while driving, the temperature of the engine may be too high, refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Engine coolant temperature: Illuminates when the engine coolant temperature is high. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, switch off the engine and let cool. Refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

- Standard instrument cluster

- Optional instrument cluster



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

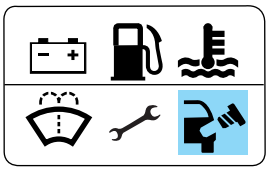
Low tire pressure warning:
Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the light remains ON at start up or while driving, the tire pressure should be checked. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. When the ignition is first turned to ON, the light will illuminate for 3 seconds to ensure the bulb is working. If the light does not turn ON, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer. For more information on this system, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system TPMS* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

Check fuel cap (if equipped): Illuminates when the fuel cap may not be properly installed. Continued driving with this light on may cause the Service engine soon warning light to come on. Refer to *Fuel filler cap* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

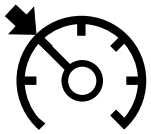
If "CHECK FUEL FILL INLET" is displayed in the message center, refer to *Message center* in the *Driver Controls* chapter for more information.

- Standard instrument cluster

- Optional instrument cluster



Speed control (if equipped):
Illuminates when the speed control is activated. Turns off when the speed control system is deactivated.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

O/D off: Illuminates when the overdrive function of the transmission has been turned off, refer to the *Driving* chapter.

O/D
OFF

AdvanceTrac®: Flashes when the AdvanceTrac® with RSC system is active. Illuminates solid when the system has been disabled (by the driver or as a result of a system failure), refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.

If "SERVICE RSC NOW" is displayed in the message center, refer to *Message center* in the *Driver Controls* chapter for more information.

Four wheel drive low (if equipped): Illuminates when four-wheel drive low is engaged. If the light fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned ON, or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

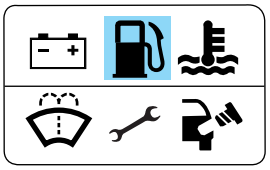
4x4
LOW

Four wheel drive high (if equipped): Illuminates when four-wheel drive is engaged. If the light fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned ON, or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

4x4

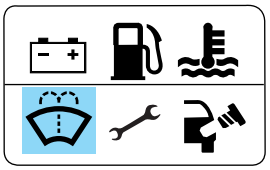
Door ajar: Illuminates when the ignition is in the ON position and any door, liftgate or the liftgate glass is open.

Low fuel (if equipped): Illuminates when the fuel level in the fuel tank is at or near empty (refer to *Fuel gauge* in this chapter).



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Low washer fluid (if equipped): Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.



Turn signal: Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard lights are turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.

High beams: Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are turned on.

Key-in-ignition warning chime: Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the OFF/LOCK or ACCESSORY position and the driver's door is opened.

Headlamps on warning chime: Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

Turn signal warning chime: Sounds when the turn signal lever has been activated to signal a turn and not turned off after the vehicle is driven more than 2 miles (3.2 km).

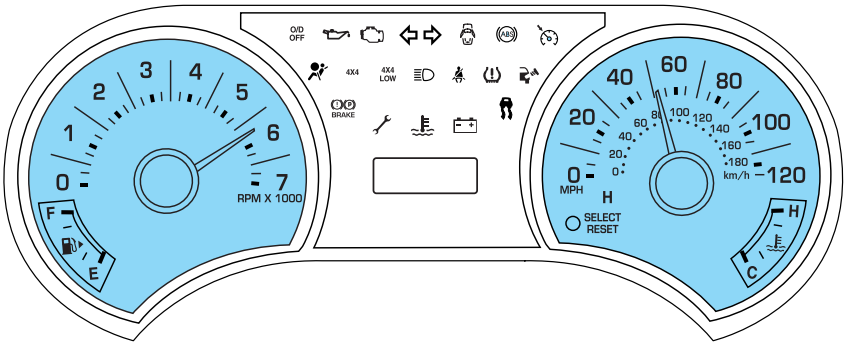
Parking brake ON warning chime: Sounds when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h).

Message center activation chime: Sounds when the following warnings DOOR AJAR, LOW FUEL LEVEL or LOW TIRE PRESSURE appear in the message center display for the first time.

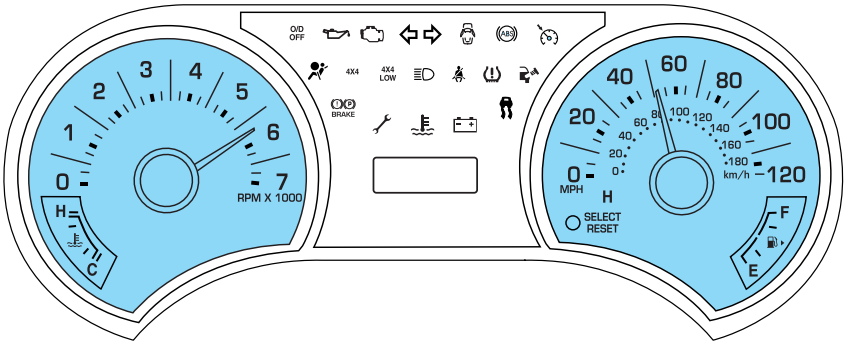
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Cluster

GAUGES



Type A

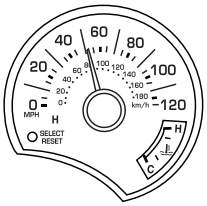


Type B

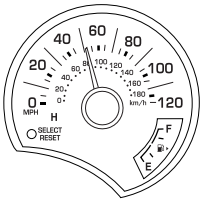
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Speedometer: Indicates the current vehicle speed.

Type A

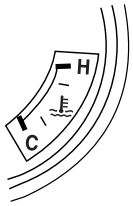


Type B

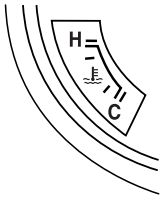


Engine coolant temperature gauge: Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the needle will be in the normal range (between "H" and "C"). If it enters the red section, the engine is overheating, refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.

Type A



Type B



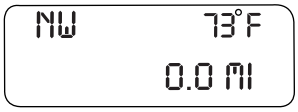
Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Cluster

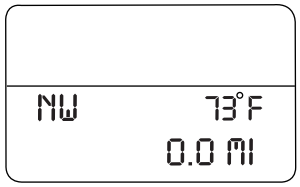
Odometer: Registers the total miles (kilometers) of the vehicle.

• Standard instrument cluster



• Optional instrument cluster

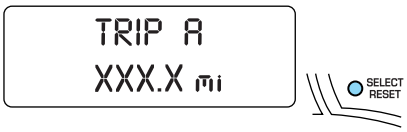
Refer to *Message center* in the *Driver Controls* chapter on how to switch the display from English to Metric.



Trip odometer: Registers the miles (kilometers) of individual journeys.

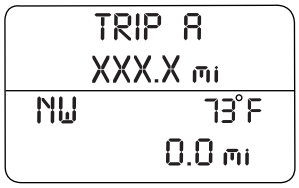
• Standard instrument cluster

Press the SELECT/RESET control once to switch from the odometer to the TRIP A feature. Press the control again to select the TRIP B feature. To reset the trip, press and hold the control again until the trip reading is 0.0 miles.



• Optional instrument cluster

Press and release the message center INFO button until TRIP A mode appears in the display. Press the control again to select the TRIP B feature. Press the RESET button to reset.

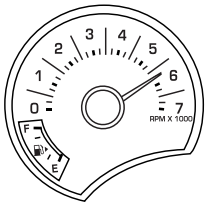


Note: Outside air temperature will only be displayed in the instrument cluster message center on vehicles with manual climate control.

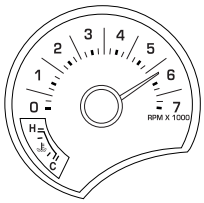
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tachometer: Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine.

Type A



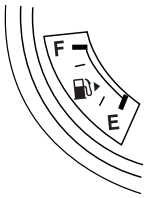
Type B



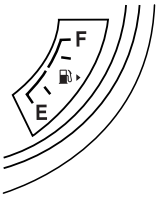
Fuel gauge: Indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank (when the ignition is in the ON position). The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is in motion or on a grade.

Refer to *Filling the tank* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

Type A



Type B



The FUEL icon and arrow indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel door is located.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

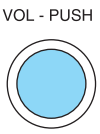
AUDIO SYSTEMS

Quick start — How to get going

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The drivers primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Listening to the radio

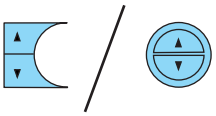
1. If the audio system is off, press VOL-PUSH to turn the radio on. Turn VOL-PUSH to adjust the volume.



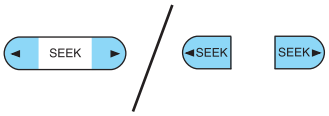
Note: The system may take a few moments to turn on.

2. Press AM/FM repeatedly to choose between AM/FM1/FM2 frequency bands.

3. Press ▲ /▼ to manually go up/down the frequency band.



Press ◀ SEEK ▶ to search down/up the chosen frequency band for the next strongest station. To disengage SEEK mode, press ▲ /▼ .

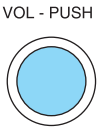


4. Once you are tuned to the desired station, press and hold a memory preset (1–6) to save the station. PRESET SAVED will appear on the display and the sound will return signifying the station has been saved. You can save up to six stations in each frequency band — six in AM, six in FM1 and six in FM2. To access your saved stations, press the corresponding memory preset. The memory preset # and the station frequency will appear on the display.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Listening to satellite radio (if equipped)

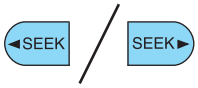
1. If the audio system is turned off, press VOL-PUSH to turn the radio on. Turn VOL-PUSH to adjust the volume.



Note: The system may take a few moments to turn on.

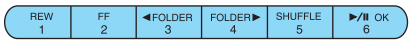
2. Press AUX repeatedly to cycle through auxiliary audio sources. Select SAT1, SAT2 or SAT3 to listen to satellite radio.

3. Press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to access the previous or next satellite channel.



You may also seek by music category. For further information, refer to *CATEGORY* listing under the MENU control on your specific audio system.

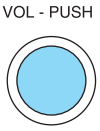
4. Once you are tuned to the desired channel, press and hold a memory preset (1–6) to save the channel. PRESET SAVED will appear on the display and the sound will return signifying the station has been saved. You can save up to six channels in each — six in SAT1, six in SAT2, and six in SAT3.



To access your saved channels, press the corresponding memory preset. The memory preset # and the channel name will appear on the display.

Listening to a CD/MP3 (if equipped)

1. If the audio system is turned off, press VOL-PUSH to turn the radio on. Turn VOL-PUSH to adjust the volume.



Note: The system may take a few moments to turn on.

2. Press CD to enter CD mode. If a disc is already loaded into the system, CD play will begin where it ended last.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

For a single CD system, if a disc is not already loaded, insert only one, label side up into the CD slot. LOADING CD and READING DISC will appear in the display. The first track on the disc will begin playing.

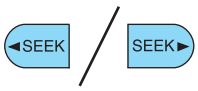
For an in-dash six CD system, if a disc is not already loaded, press LOAD. Select a slot number using memory presets 1–6. When the display reads LOAD CD#, load the desired disc, label side up. If you do not choose a slot within 5 seconds, the system will choose for you. Once loaded, the first track will begin to play.

To auto load up to 6 discs, press and hold LOAD until the display reads AUTOLOAD#. Load the desired disc, label side up. The system will prompt you to load discs for the remaining available slots. Insert the discs, one at a time, label side up, when prompted. Once loaded, the last loaded disc will begin to play.

Note: An MP3 disc with folders will show F001 (folder #) T001 (track #) in the display. An MP3 disc without folders will show T001 (track#) in the display. Refer to *MP3 track and folder structure* later in this chapter for further information.

3. In CD/MP3 mode, you can access the following features:

Press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to access the previous/next tracks.



Press and hold REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.

Press and hold FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3 track.

While in folder mode, press ◀ FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if available.

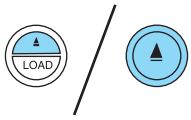
While in folder mode, press FOLDER ▶ to access the next folder on MP3 discs, if available.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display.
To disengage, press SHUFFLE again. SHUFFLE OFF will appear in the display.

Note: In track mode, all tracks on the *current* disc will shuffle in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the *current* folder.

Press ▶/❙❙ (play/pause) when a CD/MP3 is playing to pause the disc. CD PAUSE will appear in the display. Press again to resume play.

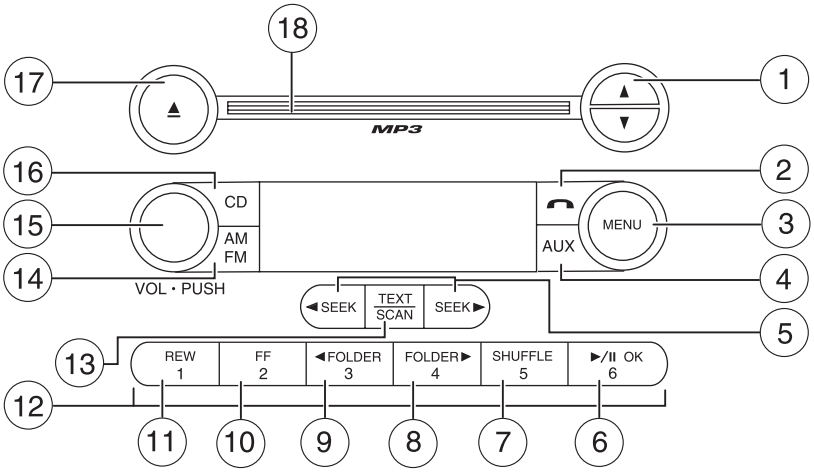


4. **For a single CD system,** press ⏏ to eject the current disc. The display will read CD EJECT.

For an in-dash six CD system, press ⏏ and then select the correct slot number using memory presets 1–6. When ready, the system will eject the disc and the display will read REMOVE CD. If the disc is not removed in 15 seconds, the system will reload the disc.
To auto eject up to 6 discs, press and hold ⏏ until the system begins ejecting all loaded discs. If the discs are not removed, the system will reload the discs.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

AM/FM Single CD/MP3 satellite compatible sound system (if equipped)



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The drivers primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Accessory delay: Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay. With this feature, the window switches, radio and moon roof (if equipped) may be used for up to ten minutes after the ignition is turned off or until either front door is opened.

1. ▲ / ▼ **(Tuner):** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Also use in menu mode to select various settings.

In satellite radio mode (if equipped), press ▲ / ▼ to tune to the next/previous channel.

In CATEGORY MODE, press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.). Refer to

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Category Mode under *Menu* for further information.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

2. **(Phone):** If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC, press to access SYNC PHONE features. Refer to the *SYNC supplement* for further information.
If your vehicle is not equipped with SYNC, the display will read NO PHONE.

3. **MENU:** Press repeatedly to access the following settings:

SATELLITE RADIO MENU (if equipped): Press MENU when satellite radio mode is active to access. Press OK to enter into the satellite radio menu. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the following options:

- **CATEGORY:** Press OK to enter category mode. Press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.) Press OK when the desired category appears in the display. After a category is selected, press SEEK to search for that specific category of channels only (i.e. ROCK). You may also select CATEGORY ALL to seek all available SIRIUS categories and channels. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.
- **SAVE SONG:** Press OK to save the currently playing song's title in the system's memory. (If you try to save something other than a song, CANT SAVE will appear in the display.) When the chosen song is playing on any satellite radio channel, the system will alert you with an audible prompt. Press OK while SONG ALERT is in the display and the system will take you to the channel playing the desired song. You can save up to 20 song titles. If you attempt to save more than 20 titles, the display will read REPLACE SONG? Press OK to access the saved titles and press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved titles. When the song appears in the display that you would like to replace, press OK. SONG REPLACED will appear in the display.
- **DELETE SONG:** Press OK to delete a song from the system's memory. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to delete, press OK. The song will appear in the display for confirmation. Press OK again

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

and the display will read SONG DELETED. If you do not want to delete the currently listed song, press ▲ / ▼ to select either RETURN or CANCEL.
Note: If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.

- **DELETE ALL SONGS:** Press OK to delete all songs from the system's memory. The display will read ARE YOU SURE ? Press OK to confirm deletion of all saved songs and the display will read ALL DELETED.
Note: If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **ENABLE ALERTS / DISABLE ALERTS:** Press OK to enable/disable the satellite alert status which alerts you when your selected songs are playing on a satellite radio channel. (The system default is disabled.) SONG ALERTS ENABLED/DISABLED will appear in the display. The menu listing will display the opposite state. For example, if you have chosen to enable the song alerts, the menu listing will read DISABLE as the alerts are currently on, so your other option is to turn them off.

Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

Setting the clock: Press MENU until SET HOURS or SET MINUTES is displayed. Use ▲ / ▼ to manually increase/decrease. Press MENU again to disengage clock mode. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

AUTOSET: Press MENU until the display reads AUTOSET. Autoset allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. Use ▲ / ▼ to turn on/off.
When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

RBDS: Available only in FM mode. This feature allows you to search RBDS-equipped stations for a certain category of music format: CLASSIC, COUNTRY, INFORM, JAZZ/RB, ROCK, etc.
To activate, press MENU repeatedly until RBDS (ON/OFF) appears in the display. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to toggle RBDS ON/OFF. When RBDS is OFF, you will not be able to search for RBDS equipped stations or view the station name or type. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To search for specific RBDS music categories: When the desired category appears in the display, press ▲ / ▼ to find the desired type, then press and release ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ or press and hold SCAN to begin the search.

To view the station name or type: When the desired category appears in the display, press TEXT/SCAN to toggle between displaying the station type (COUNTRY, ROCK, etc.) or the station name (WYCD, WXYT, etc.).

BASS: Press MENU to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

TREB (Treble): Press MENU to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust. Press OK to close and return to the main menu. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

BAL (Balance): Press MENU to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the audio between the left (L) and right (R) speakers. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

FADE: Press MENU to reach the fade setting. Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the audio between the back (B) and front (F) speakers. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

SPEED VOL (Speed sensitive volume, if equipped): Press MENU to reach the SPEEDVOL setting. Radio volume automatically gets louder with increasing vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

The default setting is *off;* increasing your vehicle speed will not change the volume level.

Adjust *1–7:* Increasing this setting from 1 (lowest setting) to 7 (highest setting) allows the radio volume to automatically change slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Recommended level is *1–3;* SPEED OFF turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

TRACK/FOLDER MODE: Available only on MP3 discs in CD mode.
In track mode, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to scroll through all tracks on the disc
In folder mode, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to scroll through tracks within the selected folder.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Press ◀ FOLDER, FOLDER ▶ to access the previous/next folder (if available).
Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

COMPRESS (Compression): Available only in CD/MP3 mode. Press MENU until COMPRESS ON/OFF appears in the display.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to toggle ON/OFF. When COMPRESS is ON, the system will bring the soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

SINGLE PLAY/DUAL PLAY (if equipped): If SINGLE PLAY is ON, press ▲ / ▼ for DUAL PLAY. For further information on Single Play/Dual Play, please refer to the *Family Entertainment DVD system* later in this chapter.

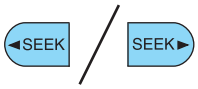
4. **AUX:** Press repeatedly to cycle through FES/DVD (if equipped), LINE IN (auxiliary audio mode), SYNC (if equipped) and SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3 modes (satellite radio, if equipped).

For location and further information on auxiliary audio mode, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) please refer to the *Family Entertainment DVD system* later in this chapter.

If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC, please refer to the *SYNC supplement* for further information.

5. **SEEK**: **In radio mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.



In CD mode, press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next CD track.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

In satellite radio mode (if equipped), press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel in the selected category. Press and hold ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to fast seek through the previous /next channels.
In TEXT MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to view the previous/additional display text.
In CATEGORY MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to select a category.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

6. ▶ / ❙❙ **OK(Play/Pause):** This control is operational in CD and DVD mode (if equipped). When a CD or DVD is playing in the FES system, press this control to play or pause the current CD or DVD. The CD/DVD status will display in the radio display.

OK: Your vehicle may be equipped with special phone and media features which will require you to confirm commands by pressing OK. For further information, refer to the *SYNC supplement.*

If your vehicle is equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) please refer to the *Family Entertainment DVD system* later in this chapter.

7. **SHUFFLE:** Press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display.
To disengage, press SHUFFLE. SHUFFLE OFF will appear in the display.

Note: In track mode, all tracks on the *current* disc will shuffle in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the current folder.

8. **FOLDER ▶** : In folder mode, press FOLDER ▶ to access next folder on MP3 discs, if available.

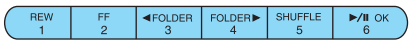
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

9. ◀ **FOLDER:** In folder mode, press ◀ FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if available.

10. **FF (Fast forward):** Press FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3 track.

11. **REW (Rewind):** Press REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.

12. **Memory presets:** To set a station, select the desired frequency band, AM, FM1 or FM2. Tune to the desired station. Press and hold a preset button until sound returns and PRESET # SAVED appears in the display. You can save up to 18 stations, six in AM, six in FM1 and FM2.



In satellite radio mode (if equipped), there are 18 available presets, six each for SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3. To save satellite channels in your memory presets, tune to the desired channel then press and hold a preset control until sound returns.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

13. **TEXT/SCAN: In radio and CD/MP3 mode,** press and hold for a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.

In MP3 mode, press and release to display track title, artist name, and disc title.

In satellite radio mode (if equipped), press and release to enter TEXT MODE and display the current song title. While in TEXT MODE, press again to scroll through the current song title, artist, channel category and the SIRIUS long channel name.

In TEXT MODE sometimes the display requires additional text to be displayed. When the ">" indicator is active, press SEEK▶ to view the additional display text. When the "<" indicator is active, press ◀ SEEK to view the previous display text.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

In satellite radio mode (if equipped), press and hold to hear a brief sampling of the next channels. Press again to stop. In CATEGORY MODE, press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of the channels in the selected category. Press again to stop.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

14. **AM/FM:** Press to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.

15. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press to turn ON/OFF. Turn to increase/decrease volume.

Note: If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a “nominal” listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

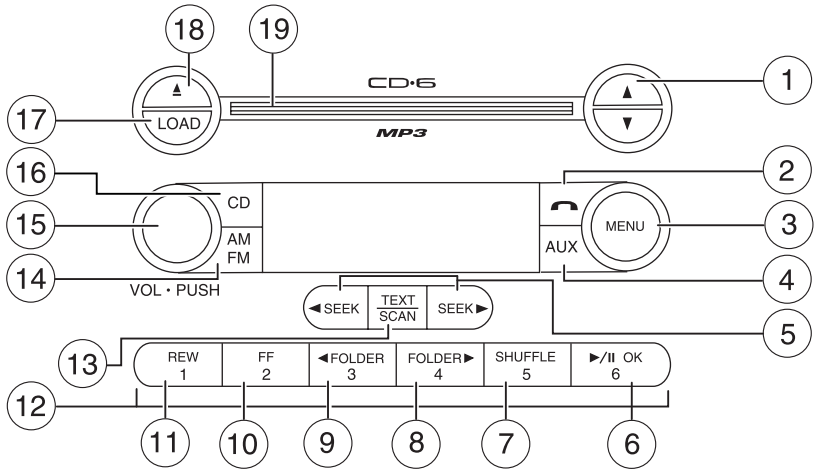
16. **CD:** Press to enter CD/MP3 mode. If a CD/MP3 is already loaded into the system, CD/MP3 play will begin where it ended last. If no CD is loaded, NO DISC will appear in the display.

17. ⏏ **(CD eject):** Press to eject a CD.

18. **CD slot:** Insert a CD label side up in the CD slot.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Audiophile AM/FM in-dash six CD/MP3 satellite compatible sound system (if equipped)



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The drivers primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Accessory delay: Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay. With this feature, the window switches, radio and moon roof (if equipped) may be used for up to ten minutes after the ignition is turned off or until either front door is opened.

1. ▲ / ▼ **(Tune/Disc selector):**

In radio mode, press to manually go up ▲ or down ▼ the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies.
In menu mode, use to select various settings.
In CD/MP3 mode, press to select the desired disc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

In satellite radio mode (if equipped), press ▲ / ▼ to tune to the next/previous channel.
In CATEGORY MODE, press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.). Refer to *Category Mode* under *Menu* for further information.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

2. **(Phone):** If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC, press to access SYNC PHONE features. For further information, please refer to the *SYNC supplement.*
If your vehicle is not equipped with SYNC, the display will read NO PHONE.

3. **MENU:** Press repeatedly to access the following settings:

SATELLITE RADIO MENU (if equipped): Press MENU when satellite radio mode is active to access. Press OK to enter into the satellite radio menu. Press ▲ /▼ to cycle through the following options:

- **CATEGORY:** Press OK to enter category mode. Press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.) Press OK when the desired category appears in the display. After a category is selected, press SEEK to search for that specific category of channels only (i.e. ROCK). You may also select CATEGORY ALL to seek all available SIRIUS categories and channels. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.
- **SAVE SONG:** Press OK to save the currently playing song's title in the system's memory. (If you try to save something other than a song, CANT SAVE will appear in the display.) When the chosen song is playing on any satellite radio channel, the system will alert you with an audible prompt. Press OK while SONG ALERT is in the display and the system will take you to the channel playing the desired song. You can save up to 20 song titles. If you attempt to save more than 20 titles, the display will read REPLACE SONG? Press OK to access the saved titles and press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved titles. When the song title appears in the display that you would like to replace, press OK. SONG REPLACED will appear in the display.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **DELETE SONG:** Press OK to delete a song from the system's memory. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to delete, press OK. The song will appear in the display for confirmation. Press OK again and the display will read SONG DELETED. If you do not want to delete the currently listed song, press ▲ / ▼ to select either RETURN or CANCEL.
  Note: If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **DELETE ALL SONGS:** Press OK to delete all songs from the system's memory. The display will read ARE YOU SURE ? Press OK to confirm deletion of all saved songs and the display will read ALL DELETED.
  Note: If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **ENABLE ALERTS / DISABLE ALERTS:** Press OK to enable/disable the satellite alert status which alerts you when your selected songs are playing on a satellite radio channel. (The system default is disabled.) SONG ALERTS ENABLED/DISABLED will appear in the display. The menu listing will display the opposite state. For example, if you have chosen to enable the song alerts, the menu listing will read DISABLE as the alerts are currently on, so your other option is to turn them off.

Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

Setting the clock: Press MENU until SET HOURS or SET MINUTES is displayed. Use ▲ / ▼ to manually increase/decrease. Press MENU again to disengage clock mode. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

AUTOSET: Press MENU until the display reads AUTOSET. Autoset allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to turn on/off.

When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

RBDS: Available only in FM mode. This feature allows you to search RBDS-equipped stations for a certain category of music format: CLASSIC, COUNTRY, INFORM, JAZZ/RB, ROCK, etc.
To activate, press MENU repeatedly until RBDS (ON/OFF) appears in the display. Use ▲ / ▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ to toggle RBDS ON/OFF. When RBDS is OFF, you will not be able to search for RBDS equipped stations or view the station name or type. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

To search for specific RBDS music categories: When the desired category appears in the display, press ▲ / ▼ to find the desired type, then press and release ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ or press and hold SCAN to begin the search.

To view the station name or type: When the desired category appears in the display, press TEXT/SCAN to toggle between displaying the station type (COUNTRY, ROCK, etc.) or the station name (WYCD, WXYT, etc.).

BASS: Press MENU to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

TREB (Treble): Press MENU to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

BAL (Balance): Press MENU to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the audio between the left (L) and right (R) speakers. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

FADE: Press MENU to reach the fade setting. Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust the audio between the back (B) and front (F) speakers. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

SPEED VOL (Speed sensitive volume, if equipped): Press MENU to reach the SPEEDVOL setting. Radio volume automatically gets louder with increasing vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Use ▲ / ▼ to adjust. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

The default setting is *off;* increasing your vehicle speed will not change the volume level.

Adjust *1–7:* Increasing this setting from 1 (lowest setting) to 7 (highest setting) allows the radio volume to automatically change slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Recommended level is *1–3;* SPEED OFF turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

TRACK/FOLDER MODE: Available only on MP3 discs in CD mode.
In track mode, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to scroll through all tracks on the disc
In folder mode, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to scroll through tracks within the selected folder.
Press ◀ FOLDER, FOLDER ▶ to access the previous/next folder (if available).
Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

COMPRESS (Compression): Available only in CD/MP3 mode. Press MENU until COMPRESS ON/OFF appears in the display.
Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to toggle ON/OFF. When COMPRESS is ON, the system will bring the soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

ALL SEATS (Occupancy mode): Use ▲ / ▼ to select and optimize sound for ALL SEATS, DRIVERS SEAT or REAR SEATS. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

SINGLE PLAY/DUAL PLAY (if equipped): If SINGLE PLAY is ON, press ▲ / ▼ for DUAL PLAY. For further information on Single Play/Dual Play, please refer to the *Family Entertainment DVD system* later in this chapter.

4. **AUX:** Press repeatedly to cycle through FES/DVD (if equipped), LINE IN (auxiliary audio mode), SYNC (if equipped) and SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3 modes (satellite radio, if equipped).

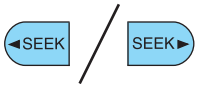
For location and further information on auxiliary audio mode, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) please refer to the *Family Entertainment DVD system* later in this chapter.

If your vehicle is equipped with the SYNC, please refer to the *SYNC supplement* for further information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. **SEEK**: **In radio and CD/MP3 mode,** press to access the previous (◀) or next (▶) strong station or track.



In satellite radio mode (if equipped), press ◀ SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel in the selected category. Press and hold ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to fast seek through the previous /next channels.

In TEXT MODE, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to view the previous/additional display text.

In CATEGORY MODE, press ◀ SEEK ▶ to select a category.

Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

6. ▶ / ❙❙ **OKPlay/Pause:** This control is operational in CD and DVD mode (if equipped). When a CD or DVD is playing in the FES system, press this control to play or pause the current CD/DVD. The CD/DVD status will display in the radio display.

OK: Your vehicle may be equipped with special phone and media features which will require you to confirm commands by pressing OK. For further information, refer to the *SYNC supplement.*

If your vehicle is equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) please refer to the *Family Entertainment DVD system* later in this chapter.

7. **SHUFFLE:** Press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display.

To disengage, press SHUFFLE. SHUFFLE OFF will appear in the display.

Note: In track mode, all tracks on the *current* disc will shuffle in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the current folder.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

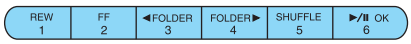
8. **FOLDER▶** : In folder mode, press FOLDER ▶ to access next folder on MP3 discs, if available.

9. **◀ FOLDER:** In folder mode, press ◀ FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if available.

10. **FF (Fast forward):** Press FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3

11. **REW (Rewind):** Press REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.

12. **Memory presets:** To set a station, select the desired frequency band, AM, FM1 or FM2. Tune to the desired station. Press and hold a preset button until sound returns and PRESET # SAVED appears in the display. You can save up to 18 stations, six in AM, six in FM1 and FM2.



In satellite radio mode (if equipped), there are 18 available presets, six each for SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3. To save satellite channels in your memory presets, tune to the desired channel then press and hold a preset control until sound returns.
Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

13. **TEXT/SCAN: In radio and CD/MP3 mode,** press and hold for a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.

In MP3 mode, press and release to display track title, artist name, and disc title.

In satellite radio mode (if equipped), press and release to enter TEXT MODE and display the current song title. While in TEXT MODE, press again to scroll through the current song title, artist, channel category and the SIRIUS long channel name.
Press and hold to hear a brief sampling of the next channels. Press again to stop.
In CATEGORY MODE, press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of the channels in the selected category. Press again to stop.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.

In TEXT MODE sometimes the display requires additional text to be displayed. When the ">" indicator is active, press SEEK ▶ to view the additional display text. When the "<" indicator is active, press ◀ SEEK to view the previous display text.

14. **AM/FM:** Press to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.

15. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press to turn ON/OFF. Turn to increase/decrease volume.

Note: If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a "nominal" listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

16. **CD:** Press to enter CD/MP3 mode. If a disc is already loaded into the system, CD/MP3 play will begin where it ended last. If no CD is loaded, NO DISC will appear in the display.

17. **LOAD:** To load a disc into the system, press LOAD. Select a slot number using memory presets 1–6. When the display reads LOAD CD#, load the desired disc, label side up. If you do not choose a slot within 5 seconds, the system will choose for you. Once loaded, the first track will begin to play.

To auto load up to 6 discs, press and hold LOAD until the display reads AUTOLOAD#. Load the desired disc, label side up. The system will prompt you to load discs for the remaining available slots. Insert the discs, one at a time, label side up, when prompted. Once loaded, the last loaded disc will begin to play.

Note: An MP3 disc with folders will show F001 (folder #) T001 (track #) in the display. An MP3 disc without folders will show T001 (track#) in the display. Refer to *MP3 folder structure* later in this chapter for further information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

18. ⏏ **(CD eject):** To eject a disc from the system, press ⏏ . Select the correct slot number using memory presets 1–6. When ready, the system will eject the disc and the display will read REMOVE CD. If the disc is not removed in 15 seconds, the system will reload the disc.

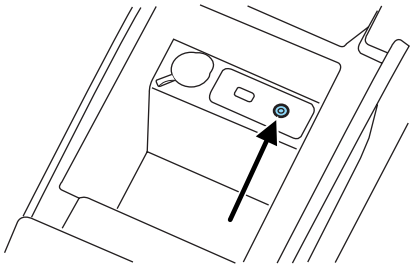
If there is only one disc present in the system, press ⏏ .

To auto eject up to 6 CDs, press and hold ⏏ until the system begins ejecting a loaded disc. Remove the disc and the next slot will be ejected. If the ejected disc is not removed from the slot, the system will reload the disc and cancel the auto eject function.

19. **CD slot:** When prompted by the system, insert a CD label side up.

Auxiliary input jack (Line in)

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The drivers primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.



Your vehicle is equipped with an Auxiliary Input Jack (AIJ). The Auxiliary Input Jack provides a way to connect your portable music player to the in-vehicle audio system. This allows the audio from a portable music player to be played through the vehicle speakers with high fidelity. To achieve optimal performance, please observe the following instructions when attaching your portable music device to the audio system.

Required equipment:

1. Any portable music player designed to be used with headphones

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. An audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8 in. (3.5 mm) connectors at each end

To play your portable music player using the auxiliary input jack:

1. Begin with the vehicle parked and the radio turned off.

2. Ensure that the battery in your portable music player is new or fully charged and that the device is turned off.

3. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end of the audio extension cable to the AIJ in your vehicle.

4. Turn the radio on, using either a tuned FM station or a CD loaded into the system. Adjust the volume to a comfortable listening level.

5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to 1/2 the volume.

6. Press AUX on the vehicle radio repeatedly until LINE IN appears in the display.
You should hear audio from your portable music player although it may be low.

7. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station or CD by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

Troubleshooting:

1. Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. Line level outputs are intended for connection to a home stereo and are not compatible with the AIJ. The AIJ will only work correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.

2. Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio in your audio system as this will cause distortion and will reduce sound quality. Many portable music players have different output levels, so not all players should be set at the same levels. Some players will sound best at full volume and others will need to be set at a lower volume.

3. If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problems persists, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable music player.

4. The portable music player must be controlled in the same manner when it is used with headphones as the AIJ does not provide control (play, pause, etc.) over the attached portable music player.

5. For safety reasons, connecting or adjusting the settings on your portable music player should not be attempted while the vehicle is

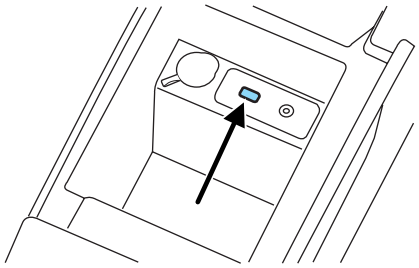
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

moving. Also, the portable music player should be stored in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.

USB port (if equipped)

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The drivers primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a USB port inside your center console. This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, and also to charge devices if they support this feature. For further information on this feature, refer to *Accessing and using your USB port* in the *SYNC* supplement or *Navigation system* supplement.



GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION

Radio frequencies:

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM: 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM: 87.7, 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

Radio reception factors:

There are three factors that can affect radio reception:

- Distance/strength: The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, power lines, electric fences, traffic lights and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a broadcast tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and play while the weak station frequency is displayed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CD/CD player care

Do:

- Handle discs by their edges only. (Never touch the playing surface).
- Inspect discs before playing.
- Clean only with an approved CD cleaner.

- Wipe discs from the center out.

Don't:

- Expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Clean using a circular motion.

CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.

Do not use any irregular shaped CDs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.

Audio system warranty and service

Refer to the *Warranty Guide* for audio system warranty information. If service is necessary, see your dealer or qualified technician.

MP3 track and folder structure

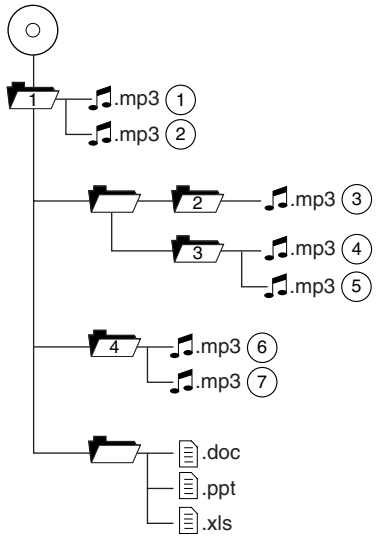
Your MP3 system recognizes MP3 individual tracks and folder structure as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode. For more information on track and folder mode, refer to *Sample MP3 structure* in the following section.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255.
  Note: The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders will help with navigation through the disc files.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Sample MP3 structure

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system will read the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension will be played. Other files will be ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in vehicle system.



In track mode, the system will display and play the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files will be played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system will only play the .mp3 files in the current folder.

Satellite radio information (if equipped)

Satellite radio channels: SIRIUS broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, visit www.sirius.com in the United States, www.sirius-canada.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1–888–539–7474.

Satellite radio reception factors: To receive the satellite signal, your vehicle has been equipped with a satellite radio antenna located on the roof of your vehicle. The vehicle roof provides the best location for an unobstructed, open view of the sky, a requirement of a satellite radio system. Like AM/FM, there are several factors that can affect satellite radio reception performance:

- Antenna obstructions: For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a ground based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in an audio mute.

Unlike AM/FM audible static, you will hear an audio mute when there is a satellite radio signal interference. Your radio display may display NO SIGNAL to indicate the interference.

SIRIUS satellite radio service: SIRIUS Satellite Radio is a subscription based satellite radio service that broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming. A service fee is required in order to receive SIRIUS service. Vehicles that are equipped with a factory installed SIRIUS Satellite Radio system include:

- Hardware and limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle.
- Online media player providing access to all 65 SIRIUS music channels over the internet (U.S. customers only).

For information on extended subscription terms, contact SIRIUS at 1–888–539–7474.

Note: SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.

Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN): This 12–digit Satellite Serial Number is needed to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS. While in Satellite Radio mode, you can view this number on the radio display by pressing AUX and Preset 1 control simultaneously.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
ACQUIRING	Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel.	No action required. This message should disappear shortly.
SAT FAULT	Internal module or system failure present.	If this message does not clear within a short period of time, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service.
INVALID CHNL	Channel no longer available.	This previously available channel is no longer available. Tune to another channel. If the channel was one of your presets, you may choose another channel for that preset button.
UNSUBSCRIBED	Subscription not available for this channel.	Contact SIRIUS at 1–888–539–7474 to subscribe to the channel or tune to another channel.
NO TEXT	Artist information not available.	Artist information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Radio Display	Condition	Action Required
NO TEXT	Song title information not available.	Song title information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO TEXT	Category information not available.	Category information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
NO SIGNAL	Loss of signal from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to the vehicle antenna.	You are in a location that is blocking the SIRIUS signal (i.e., tunnel, under an overpass, dense foliage, etc). The system is working properly. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
UPDATING	Update of channel programming in progress.	No action required. The process may take up to three minutes.
CALL SIRIUS 1–888–539–7474	Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS Satellite Radio.	Call SIRIUS at 1–888–539–7474 to re-activate or resolve subscription issues.

FAMILY ENTERTAINMENT DVD SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The drivers primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Family Entertainment System (FES) which allows you to listen to audio CDs, MP3 discs, watch DVDs and to plug in and play a variety of standard video game systems. The DVD player is capable of playing standard DVDs, CDs, MP3s and is compatible with CD-R/W, CD-R and certain CD-ROM media.

Please review this material to become familiar with the FES features and controls as well as the very important safety information.

Quick start

Your Family Entertainment System includes a DVD system, two sets of wireless infrared (IR) headphones and a wireless infrared (IR) remote control.

To play a DVD in the DVD system:

The DVD system can play DVD-Video, DVD-R, DVD-R/W discs as well as audio CDs and video CDs. To ensure proper disc operation, check the disc for finger prints, scratches and cleanliness. Clean with a soft cloth, wiping from center to edge.

1. Ensure that the vehicle ignition is in the RUN or ACCESSORY position.

2. Insert a DVD into the system, label-side up to turn on the system. It will load automatically.

3. Press the power button on the DVD player, then press Play (▶) to begin to play the disc.

If a DVD is already loaded into the system, press PLAY on the DVD player.

Note: If sound can be heard, but no video is present, press VIDEO to select the video source (DVD or aux-inputs).

Press VIDEO to change the source displayed on the screen. Press repeatedly to cycle through: DVD-DISC, DVD-AUX, NON-DVD, OFF.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Press the power button to turn the system OFF. The indicator light will turn off indicating the system is off.

Note: The audio from the DVD system will play over all vehicle speakers and can be adjusted by the radio volume control.

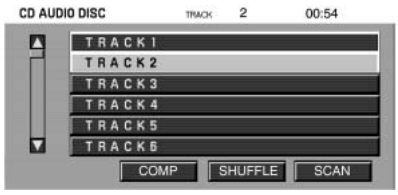
To play a CD in the DVD system:

The DVD system can play audio CDs, CD-R and CD-R/W, CD-ROM and video CDs. To ensure proper disc operation, check the disc for finger prints and scratches. Clean the disc with a soft cloth, wiping from the center to the edge.

1. Ensure that the vehicle ignition is in the RUN or ACCESSORY position.

2. Insert a CD into the system, label-side up to turn on the DVD system. It will load and automatically begin to play. If there is already a CD in the system, press PLAY on the DVD player.

3. The disc will begin to play and the 'CD Audio Disc' screen will display. From this screen, you can also select from COMPRESSION, SHUFFLE and SCAN features.



To play an MP3 disc in the DVD system:

1. Ensure that the vehicle ignition is in the RUN or ACCESSORY position.

2. Insert an MP3 disc into the system, label-side up to turn on the DVD system. It will load and automatically begin to play. If there is already a disc in the system, press PLAY on the DVD player.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. The disc will begin to play and the 'MP3 Audio Disc' screen will display and allow you to access the COMPRESSION, SHUFFLE, SCAN and FOLDER MODE features.

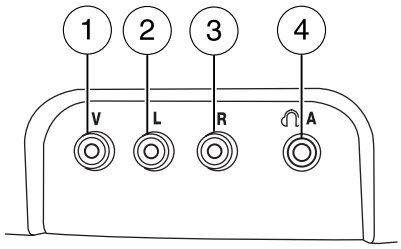
To play an auxiliary source through the DVD system

The DVD system can be used to connect and play auxiliary electronic devices such as game systems, personal camcorders, video cassette recorders, etc.

1. Ensure that the vehicle ignition is in the RUN or ACCESSORY position.

2. Press the power button to turn the DVD system on. The indicator light next to the power button will illuminate.

3. Connect an auxiliary audio/video source by connecting RCA cords (not included) to the RCA jacks on the left hand side of the system.



- Yellow (1) — video input
- White (2) — left channel audio input
- Red (3) — right channel audio input

4. Press MEDIA on the DVD system to change the media source to AUX.

5. Press VIDEO on the DVD system to change the video source to DVD-AUX. If your source is properly plugged in, it will appear on the LCD (Liquid Crystal Display) screen. If your auxiliary source does not have a video signal, or if the DVD system does not detect a video signal from the auxiliary source, the screen will remain black. If the video source is set to DVD-AUX, the display will automatically turn on if a video signal is detected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To listen to audio over the headphones (Dual play mode):

1. You may listen to channels A and B over wired or wireless headphones. Refer to *Using the infrared wireless headphones* and *Using wired headphones* for further information.

- Black (4) — wired headphone output (wired headphones not included)

2. Press the headphone/speaker button on the DVD player or press the 2 and 4 memory presets on the audio system at the same time.

A green light will illuminate next to either the A or B Headphone Control Button to indicate which channel is active (able to be controlled).

3. Press MEDIA to change the audio source of the active channel (A or B). The audio source will be shown on the display. You may change the active channel by pressing the A or B headphone control button.

Note: Channel A can access any possible media source (AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, AUX). Channel B can only access DVD and AUX sources.

Note: Refer to *Single play/Dual play* for more information.

Using the infrared (IR) wireless headphones:

1. Press the power control on the earpiece to turn the headphones ON.

2. Select Channel A or B for each set of wireless headphones by using the A/B control on the ear piece.

3. Adjust the headphone volume using the rotary dial on the earpiece.

Using wired headphones (not included):

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children operate the system while unsupervised. If wired headphones or auxiliary systems are used, children may become entangled in the cords and seriously injure themselves.

1. Connect the wired headphones in to the headphone jacks on either side of the DVD system. Each side is labeled A or B. Headphones plugged into jack A will listen to Channel A and headphones plugged into jack B will listen to Channel B.

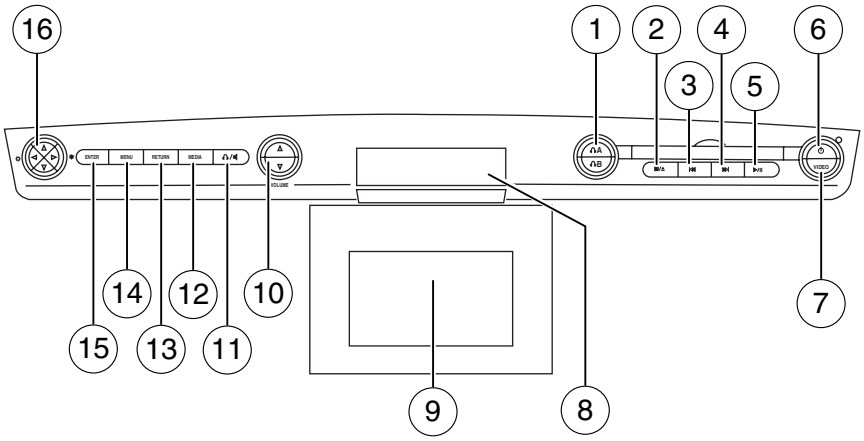
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Adjust the volume levels using the volume controls on the DVD system.

To adjust display brightness:

To decrease/increase the brightness level on the display screen, press the brightness control on the DVD system. A display will appear at the bottom of the screen indicating the brightness level. The brightness display will only appear when the menu is not displayed.

DVD player controls



1. **Headphone control A/B:** Press to select either the A or B headphone source. Then press MEDIA to select the desired playing media for that headset. When a headphone channel has been selected (A or B), selections will affect the source on that channel only.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Note: Headphone A can access any possible media (AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, DVD-AUX). Headphone B can only access DVD and DVD-AUX.
For further information, refer to *Single play/Dual play* later in this section.

2. ■ / ⏏ **(Stop/Eject):** Press once to stop and press a second time to eject a disc from the DVD system.

3. ⏮ **(Reverse):** Press and release for the previous chapter or track. Press and hold to reverse search a DVD, Video CD, or FES CD in DVD/CD mode.

4. ⏭ **(Fast forward):** Press and release for the next chapter or track. Press and hold to forward search a DVD, Video CD, or FES CD in DVD/CD mode.

5. ▶ / ❙❙ **(Play/Pause):** Press (Play) to select DVD mode (and to turn the DVD system on if it is off).
If a disc is present, it will resume or begin to play. Press (Pause) while playing a disc to pause a DVD or CD.

6. **On/Off:** Press to turn the DVD system On/Off.

7. **VIDEO:** Press repeatedly to cycle through the following video state options which will be indicated on the bottom right hand corner of the display: DVD DISC, DVD-AUX, NON-DVD and Off (no indicator). If you select the DVD-AUX video source, the display will turn off if there is no video signal detected. When a video signal is detected on the auxiliary video input, and the display is in the DVD-AUX video mode, the display will automatically turn on.

8. **Infrared (IR) Receiver & Transmitter:** System sensor which reads the signals from the remote control and sends audio signals to the infrared (IR) wireless headphones.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

9. **LCD screen:** The eight inch diagonal screen rotates down to view and up into housing to store when not in use. Ensure that the screen is latched into the housing when being stored.

10. **Volume:** When in Single Play, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume over all speakers. When in Dual Play, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume for the wired headphones. (Wireless headphone volume is controlled with the rotary dial on the right ear piece.)

11. / (Headphones/Speakers): Press once for Dual Play (Headphone mode- the rear speakers are muted) and press again for Single Play (same media playing through all speakers). You can also press the 2 and 4 memory preset buttons on the audio system at the same time to perform the same function. For further interaction information, refer to *Single Play/Dual play.*

12. **MEDIA:** Press repeatedly to select from the various possible playing media sources (AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, DVD-AUX). The media will show in the status display on the top of the screen when in Dual Play mode. When in Single Play mode, the media source will be displayed on the radio.

Note: Channel A can access any possible media source (AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, DVD-AUX). Channel B can only access DVD and DVD-AUX sources.

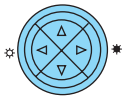
13. **RETURN:** Press to return to the playing media or to resume playback.

14. **MENU:** When playing a DVD, press MENU once to enter the DVD disc menu (if available) and press twice to enter the system set-up menu. From the set-up menu, you may select from Angle, Aspect Ratio, Language, Subtitles, Disc resume, Compression, Restore Defaults and Back. For more detailed information, refer to *Menu mode.*

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

15. **ENTER:** Press to select/confirm the current selection.

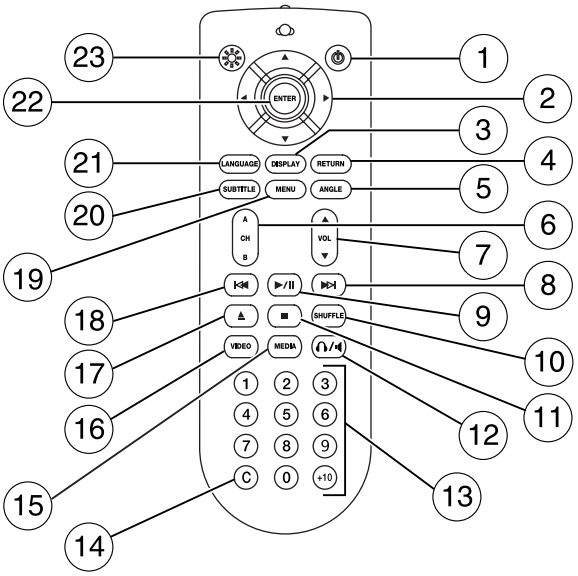
16. **Cursor /Brightness controls:** Use the cursor controls to make various selections when in any menu. When not in a menu, and in DVD mode, press ◀/▶ to adjust the brightness. A display bar will appear at the bottom of the screen indicating the brightness levels.



Remote control

Unless otherwise stated, all operations can be carried out with the remote control. Always point the remote control directly at the player. Ensure that there are no obstructions between the remote and player.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



1. **Power control:** Press to turn the FES (Family Entertainment System) ON/OFF.

2. **Cursor controls:** Use in various active menus to advance the cursor up/down/left/right. When not in a Menu, the left and right cursor controls decrease and increase the display brightness.

3. **DISPLAY:** Press to access the on-screen display of the FES functions and adjustments.

4. **RETURN:** Press to return to the previous menu screen.

5. **ANGLE** (DVD dependent): Press to select the angle to view the scene.

6. **Channel A/B:** Press to select either A or B headphones and then use the MEDIA control to select the desired playing media for the headphones.

7. **VOL (Volume):** When in Single Play, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume over all speakers. When in Dual Play, press to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume for the wired headphones.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

(Wireless headphone volume is controlled with the rotary dial on the right ear piece.)

8. **Fast Forward/Next:** In DVD mode, press and hold for a quick advance within the DVD. Press and release to advance to the next chapter. In CD/MP3 mode, press to access the next track.

9. **Play/Pause:** Press to play or pause a DVD.

10. **SHUFFLE:** Press to play all tracks on the current CD/MP3 disc in random order.

11. **STOP:** Press to stop the current DVD or CD/MP3.

12. / **Speaker/Headphone** (Single/Dual Play): Press to toggle between Single Play (same media playing through all speakers) and Dual Play (headphone mode — the rear speakers are muted). You can also press the 2 and 4 memory presets on the audio system at the same time to perform the same function.

13. **Numeric Keypad:** Use the numeric controls to enter in a specific CD/MP3 track or DVD chapter to be played.

14. **C (Cancel):** Press to cancel/clear the numeric input (i.e. chapter number).

15. **MEDIA:** Press to cycle through the possible media sources: AM, FM1, FM2, SAT (if equipped), CD, DVD, LINE IN (if equipped), DVD-AUX.
Channel B can only access DVD and AUX sources.

16. **VIDEO:** Press to cycle through video states: DVD-DISC, DVD-AUX, NON-DVD, Off.

17. **EJECT:** Press to eject a disc from the FES.

18. **Fast reverse/Previous:** When a DVD is playing, press and hold for a quick reverse within the DVD. Press and release for the previous chapter. Press PLAY to resume normal playback speed and volume.
In CD/MP3 mode, press to access the previous track.

19. **MENU:** Press to access the DVD disc menu for selections. Press MENU again when in the DVD disc menu to access the system set-up menu.

20. **SUBTITLE** (DVD dependent): Press to turn the subtitle feature ON or OFF.

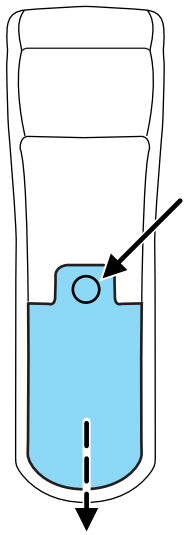
21. **LANGUAGE** (DVD dependent): Press to select the desired language.

22. **ENTER:** Press to select the highlighted menu option.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

23. **ILLUMINATION**: Press to illuminate the remote control and backlight all of the buttons.

Battery replacement



Batteries are supplied with the remote control unit. Since all batteries have a limited shelf life, replace them when the unit fails to control the DVD player.

Remove the screw and unlatch the battery cover to access the batteries.

The remote control unit uses two AAA batteries which are supplied with the unit.

Headphones

Wireless headphones

The driver should never use the headphones while driving the vehicle. Using headphones may prevent the driver from hearing audible warnings such as horns or emergency sirens, which could result in a crash causing serious injury. Give your full attention to driving and to the road.

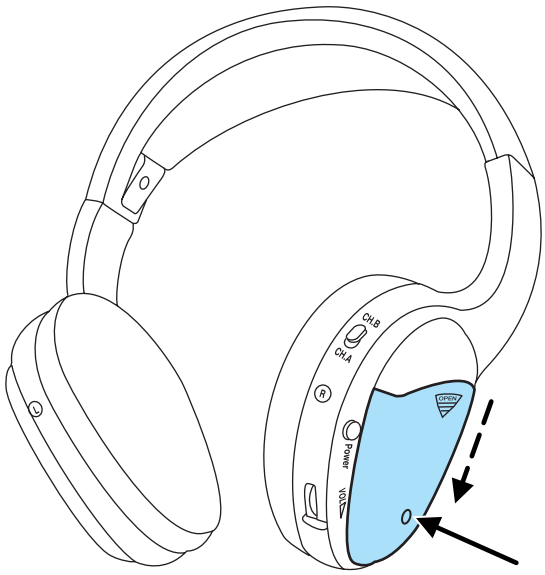
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Entertainment Systems

Your FES system is equipped with two sets of battery powered, infrared wireless headphones. Two AAA batteries are needed to operate the headphones. (Batteries are included.)

Additional infrared wireless headphones may be purchased for use with the system. Also, wired headphones may be purchased and plugged in where indicated on the left and right hand sides of the system. Refer to *Wired Headphones* following.

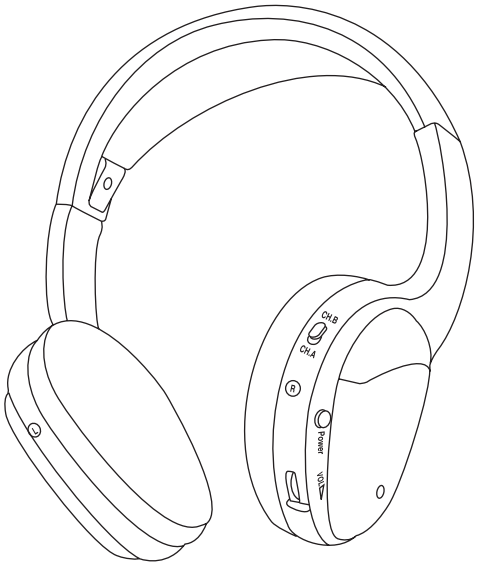
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



To install the batteries, remove the screw at the bottom of the cover. Then, lightly press down on top and slide the cover off.

When replacing the batteries, use two new batteries (alkaline recommended) and install them with the correct orientation as indicated in the battery housing.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



To operate the headphones:

- Press POWER on the ear piece to turn on the headphones. A red indicator light will illuminate indicating the headphones are ON. Press POWER again to turn the headphones off.
- Adjust the headphones to comfortably fit your head using the headband adjustment.
- Select the desired audio source (Channel A or B) for each set of wireless headphones by using the A/B selection switch on the ear piece.
- Adjust the volume control to the desired listening level.

Ensure that the headphones are turned off when not in use. After approximately one minute of not being in use (no infrared signal is received), the wireless headphones will automatically turn off. They will also turn off after two hours of continuous use as a power save feature. If this happens, simply turn the headphones on again and continue use.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Wired headphones

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children operate the system while unsupervised. If wired headphones or auxiliary systems are used, children may become entangled in the cords and seriously injure themselves.

The driver should never use the headphones while driving the vehicle. Using headphones may prevent the driver from hearing audible warnings such as horns or emergency sirens, which could result in a crash causing serious injury. Give your full attention to driving and to the road.

You may purchase wired headphones for your FES (Family Entertainment System). Plug them into the 3.5 mm headphone jack(s) located on the left and right sides of the system. (Channel A is located on the left side and Channel B is located on the right side.) These headphones will be active when in Dual Play mode.

To listen to the audio on wired headphones (not included), connect the wired headphones into the headphone jacks on the sides of the DVD system. The wired headphone jack for Channel A is located on the left side of the FES and is labeled A. Headphones plugged into this headphone jack will hear audio from the audio source selected to be the Channel A source. The wired headphone jack for Channel B is located on the right side of the FES and is labeled B. Headphones plugged into this headphone jack will hear audio from the audio source selected to be the Channel B source.

Adjust the headphone volume using the volume control on the DVD system.

Operation

Single play/Dual play

Your DVD and audio system work together with the infrared headphones and wired headphones (not included) to allow the rear seat passengers to listen to the radio (and other media sources) over the headphones. This enables the front and rear seat passengers to listen to a variety of sources a variety of ways.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Single Play: Single play consists of all occupants in the vehicle listening to the same playing media over the front and rear speakers. When the DVD system is on, and the same source is playing through the front and rear speakers, SINGLE PLAY will appear in the front radio display.

Dual Play: Dual play is when the rear seat passengers choose to listen to a different playing media than the front seat passengers. With the DVD and Rear Seat Controls turned ON, the rear seat passengers may choose to listen to the radio, CD, MP3, DVD, or DVD-AUX media sources over headphones while the front speakers play the chosen selection for the front audio system, they may listen to another over the headphones. DUAL PLAY will appear in the radio display.

When both the front seat passengers and the rear seat passengers listen to the same audio source, SHARED MODE will appear on the radio.

Note: If the front seat passengers are listening to the radio, the rear seat passengers can also listen to the radio; however, they will be limited to listening to the same radio channel.

Press / on the DVD player to listen to audio over the headphones.

The headphone control will now be active and a green light next to the A or B headphone control buttons will illuminate. The system can output two different audio sources over the headphones. These are called Channel A and Channel B. Both Channel A and Channel B can be listened to on the wired headphones (not included) or on the infrared (IR) wireless headphones.

Press the Headphone Control button A to change the audio source for Channel A.

Press MEDIA to change the audio source for Channel A. This information will display on the DVD system screen.

Press the Headphone Control button B to change the audio source for Channel B.

Press MEDIA to change the audio source for Channel B. This information will display on the DVD system screen. Channel B can listen to either the DVD media or the DVD system auxiliary inputs (DVD-AUX).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operation with an aftermarket audio system (Headphone only mode)

When the Family Entertainment System (FES) detects that the original radio supplied by Ford Motor Company has been removed from the vehicle, the Family Entertainment System will work in a state referred to as “Headphone Only Mode”.

While operating in Headphone Only Mode, the system will have limited functionality.

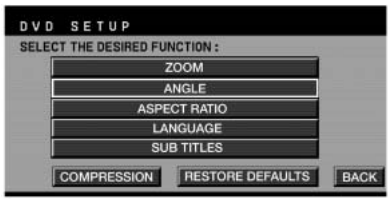
- The system will only output audio to the headphones. It will not be capable of providing audio to the speakers.
- The available sources in FES Headphone Only Mode are DVD-DISC and DVD-AUX, regardless of headphone channel (A or B).
- When a disc is inserted into the FES while in Headphone Only Mode, both headphone channels (A&B) will be connected to FES-DISC.

Menu mode

Press MENU once on the DVD system to access the DVD disc menu if available.

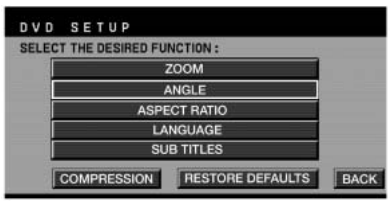
Press MENU twice to access the DVD set-up menu and the following features:

1. ZOOM
2. ANGLE
3. ASPECT RATIO
4. LANGUAGE
5. SUB TITLES



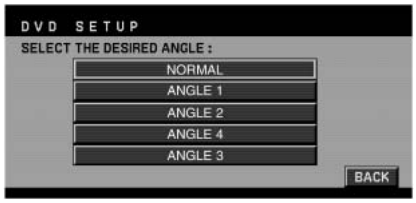
Angle mode

Select ANGLE to select various angles of view for the DVD.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

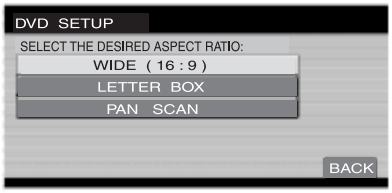
This is disc dependent — some DVD discs may have more viewing angles to select from. Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. The system default is Angle 1.



Aspect ratio

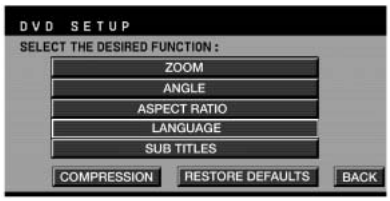
Select ASPECT RATIO to select the viewing size and shape of the video displayed on the LCD screen. This is disc dependent.

You can select from: WIDE, LETTER BOX or PAN SCAN. Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. The LCD screen display will immediately change to your selection after the system resumes playback of the DVD. The system default is WIDE (16:9).



Language

Select LANGUAGE to select the language you would like to use for audio output (English, Spanish, French). This is disc dependent.

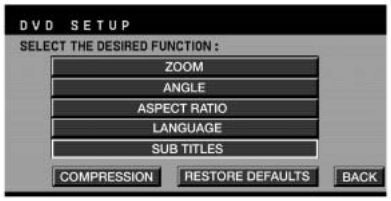


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

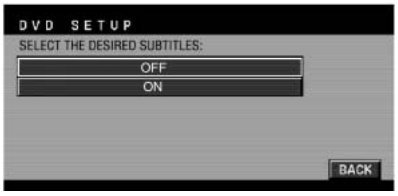
Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. The system default is English.

Subtitles

Select SUBTITLES to turn the subtitle option on or off. The system default is OFF.



Once you have made your selection, press ENTER to confirm. This is disc dependent.



Audio CDs

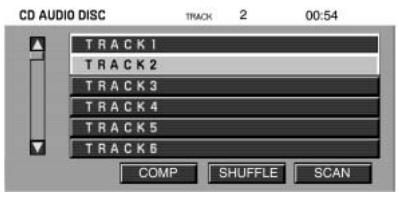
To play audio CDs on your DVD system:

1. Ensure that the vehicle ignition is in the RUN or ACCESSORY position.

2. Ensure that the DVD system is ON.

3. Insert an audio CD into the DVD system, label side up.

4. The track and elapsed time will appear in the status bar. Use the DVD cursor controls on the bezel to highlight which track you would like to play. You can also use the cursor controls to highlight COMPRESSION, SHUFFLE or



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SCAN. Once you have highlighted the desired track or function, press ENTER on the DVD bezel to confirm your selection.

COMP (Compression): Compression brings soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level when in CD mode. Press to turn the feature ON/OFF

SHUFFLE: Press to hear all tracks on the current CD in random order. Press again to stop.

SCAN: Press for a brief sampling of all tracks on the current CD. Press again to stop.

Playing MP3 discs

To play an MP3 disc on your DVD system:

1. Ensure that the vehicle ignition is in the RUN or ACCESSORY position.
2. Ensure that the DVD system is ON.
3. Insert the MP3 disc into the DVD system, label side up.
4. The folder, track and elapsed time will appear in the status bar. The screen will list the Artist, Title, Album and File Name.

COMP (Compression): Compression brings soft and loud CD/MP3 passages together for a more consistent listening level when in CD mode. Press to turn the feature ON/OFF

SHUFFLE: Press to hear all tracks on the current MP3 folder in random order. Press again to stop.

SCAN: Press for a brief sampling of all tracks on the current MP3 folder. Press again to stop.

FOLDER LIST: Press access folder mode and to go to the previous/next folder in the MP3 disc.

MP3 disc quality factors

Several factors can effect disc playback quality:

- Disc capacity — Each disc contains about 650 MB of storage capacity. We do not recommend using high capacity discs containing 700MB of storage.
- Disc type — Some CD-RW discs may operate inconsistently and may cause an error message to appear. We recommend burning MP3 files onto CD-R discs.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Disc finalization — The disc may be left open for the purpose of adding sessions to it at a later time, but be sure to close each session or the disc will not play.
- Bit rate — The player supports bit rates from 32–320 kbps, as well as variable bit rate MP3 files, but lower bit rates will have a noticeable effect on sound quality and are recommended only for speech or low fidelity music material. We recommend that you encode MP3 files using a high quality encoder.
- PC configuration — Encoding MP3 files requires intensive use of your computer's resources. Follow the PC configuration recommendations of the encoder software vendor. We recommend that you avoid running other software applications on your PC during MP3 encoding to avoid undesirable noise and distortion.

CD, MP3 and CD player care

- Handle discs by their edges only. Never touch the playing surface.
- Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Do not insert more than one disc into the slot of the CD player (if equipped).
- Always store discs out of direct sunlight. Excessive heat may damage or warp discs.
- Use care when handling and playing CD-R and CD-RW discs, which are more susceptible to damage from heat, light and stress than are regular CDs.
- Always insert and remove a disc by holding the disc flat, with the playing surface facing down, in order to prevent damage to the disc or the player.
- Never insert any object other than a compact disc (CD) or digital versatile disc (DVD) into the player, as doing so may damage the player and may cause injury to you.
- Do not disassemble the player. The laser used in disc playback is extremely harmful to the eyes.

The FES DVD system is designed to play commercially pressed 12 cm (4.75 in) audio compact discs and digital versatile discs (DVD) only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD and DVD players. Irregular shaped CDs or DVDs, CDs or DVDs with a scratch protection film attached, and CDs

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the FES DVD system. The label may peel and cause the CD or DVD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs or DVDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ball point pens may damage CDs or DVDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.

Playing a DVD

1. Ensure that the vehicle ignition is in the RUN or ACCESSORY position.
2. Ensure that the navigation system is on.
3. Insert a DVD label-side up into the system.
4. Use the DVD bezel controls to:

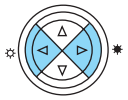
Press to play or pause a DVD.

Press to stop or eject a DVD.

Press and release to go to the previous chapter. Press and hold for a fast reverse search.

Press and release to go to the next chapter. Press and hold for a fast forward search.

Press when not in menu mode to adjust brightness, or when in menu mode to navigate through the menu selections.



Press to adjust volume levels.

Slow play

1. With a DVD playing, press pause.

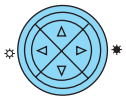
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Press and hold the reverse or advance button to enter into slow play mode. Once in slow play mode, press and release the reverse or advance button repeatedly to cycle through 1/4 and 1/2. These will display on the status bar on top of the screen as the screens cycle through at this rate.

Frame by frame

1. With a DVD playing, press pause.

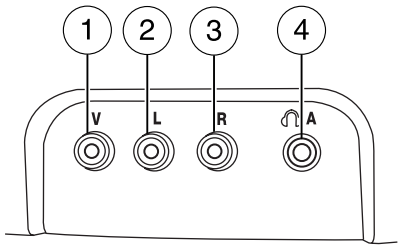
2. Press the right cursor button. The DVD will advance one frame. Each press of the right cursor button will advance the DVD video by one frame.



Headphone/auxiliary jacks

There are wired headphones (not included) and auxiliary jacks on the left and right side of your DVD system. They can be used to plug in wired headphones or to connect and play auxiliary electronic devices such as game systems, personal camcorders, video cassette recorders, etc.

On the left side of the system is the Headphone A input jack. This headphone will listen to the media selected on the Channel A source. When you need to make any adjustments to the media, volume, etc, ensure that the Channel A source is highlighted. For more information, refer to *Headphone adjustments*.

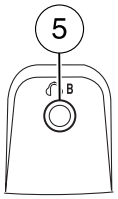


Also located here are the various auxiliary jacks which can be used to plug in a VCR, camcorder, video games, etc. The specific jacks are as follows:

1. Yellow: video input
2. White: left channel audio input
3. Red: right channel audio input
4. Black: wired headphone jack (not included)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The B headphone jack (5) is located on the right side of the DVD system. Plug in wired headphones (not included) here.



Note: The B headphones can only access DVD and AUX modes. They cannot access radio sources.

Audio displays

Your DVD system interacts closely with the front audio system. Status messages will appear in the radio display showing the DVD status. Some possible radio display messages:

- SINGLE PLAY or DUAL PLAY
- DVD LOAD
- DVD MENU
- DVD STOP

Audio interaction

You can then also use the front audio controls to advance, reverse, play and pause a DVD. While a DVD is playing you may use the following controls on the front radio:

- **SEEK:** Press to advance to the previous (◀) or next (▶) DVD chapters.
- ▶❙❙ : Press to play a DVD or to pause the DVD.

When the radio displays “DVD MENU”, press PLAY on the radio (memory preset #6), to play the disc.

Parental control for the DVD system

Your Family Entertainment System (FES) allows you to have control over the rear seat controls in a few different ways. The DVD system is automatically activated when the vehicle ignition is ON, which allows the rear seat passengers to use the DVD system.

There are three levels of control of the FES buttons. The states are FULL (enabled), LOCAL or LOCKED (disabled). To change the level of control, press the memory preset controls 3 and 5 simultaneously on the front audio controls. The control level will cycle each time the buttons are pressed simultaneously. The three states are described as:

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

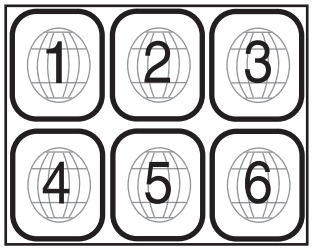
FULL (enabled): The FES has control over the primary (speaker) and secondary (headphone) audio sources.

LOCAL: The FES has control over the secondary source (headphones) only. The radio will ignore button presses that affect the primary (speaker) audio source.

LOCKED (disabled): The FES buttons are locked and all FES button presses are ignored by the radio and the FES except for load and eject.

When the DVD system is ON, you can then press the memory preset controls 2 and 4 simultaneously to toggle between Single Play and Dual Play. In Single Play mode, all speakers listen to the same media. In Dual Play mode, rear seat passengers can use the infrared wireless, or wired (not included) headphones to listen to a different playing media than the front seat passengers.

General information



Note: DVDs are formatted by regions. US and Canada systems can only play region 1 DVDs and Mexico systems can only play region 4 DVDs. Systems sold in vehicles targeted for other parts of the world would have different regions. If a playback problem is encountered, please ensure that you are using a disc designed for your vehicle. The region coding can be found stamped on the disc or on the box, and can say 'region-1' or 'region 4', etc. They may also be marked by a numerical symbol.

Macrovision: This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

MP3: Supply of this product only conveys a license for private, non-commercial use and does not convey a license nor imply any right to

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

use this product in any commercial (i.e. revenue generating) real time broadcasting (terrestrial, satellite, cable and /or any other media) broadcasting/streaming via internet, intranets and/or other networks or in other electronic content distribution systems, such as pay-audio or audio-on-demand applications. An independent license for such use is required. For details, please visit http:// www.mp3licensing.com.

Safety information

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The drivers primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Read all of the safety and operating instructions before operating the system and retain for future reference.

Do not attempt to service, repair or modify the Family Entertainment System (FES). See your dealer.

Do not insert foreign objects into the DVD compartment.

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children operate the system while unsupervised. If wired headphones or auxiliary systems are used, children may become entangled in the cords and seriously injure themselves.

The front glass on the liquid crystal display (LCD) flip-down screen may break when hit with a hard surface. If the glass breaks, do not touch the liquid crystalline material. In case of contact with skin, wash immediately with soap and water.

The driver should not attempt to operate any function of the DVD system while the vehicle is in motion. Give full attention to driving and to the road. Pull off the road in a safe place before inserting or extracting DVDs from the system. A remote control is included in the system to allow the rear seat occupants to operate the FES functions without distracting the driver.

Do not expose the liquid crystal display (LCD) flip-down screen to direct sunlight or intensive ultraviolet rays for extensive periods of time. Ultraviolet rays deteriorate the liquid crystal.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Be sure to review User Manuals for video games and video game equipment when used as auxiliary inputs for your Family Entertainment System (FES).

Do not operate video games or video equipment if the power cords and/or cables are broken, split or damaged. Carefully place cords and/or cables where they will not be stepped on or interfere with the operation of seats and/or compartments.

Disconnect video games and video equipment power cords and/or cables when not in use.

Avoid touching auxiliary input jacks with your fingers. Do not blow on them or allow them to get wet or dirty.

Do not clean any part of the DVD player with benzene, paint thinner or any other solvent.

Federal Communication Commission (FCC) Compliance

Changes or modifications not approved by Ford Lincoln-Mercury could void user's authority to operate the equipment. This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference and radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Care and service of the DVD player

Environmental extremes

DVD players which are subjected to harsh environmental conditions may be damaged or perform at less than maximum capability. To avoid these outcomes, whenever possible avoid exposing your DVD player to:

- extremely hot or cold temperatures.
- direct sunlight.
- high humidity.
- a dusty environment.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- locations where strong magnetic fields are generated.

Temperature extremes

When the vehicle is parked under direct sunlight or in an extremely cold place for a long period of time, wait until the cabin temperature of the vehicle is at normal temperature before operating the system.

Humidity and moisture condensation

Moisture in the air will condense in the DVD player under extremely humid conditions or when moving from a cold place to a warm one. Moisture condensation may cause damage to the DVD and/or player. If moisture condensation occurs, do not insert a CD or DVD into the player. If one is already in the player, remove it. Turn the DVD player ON to dry the moisture before inserting a DVD. This could take an hour or more.

Foreign substances

Exercise care to prevent dirt and foreign objects from entering the DVD player compartment. Be especially careful not to spill liquids of any kind onto the media controls or into the system. If liquid is accidentally spilled onto the system, immediately turn the system OFF and consult a qualified service technician.

Cleaning the liquid crystal display (LCD) flip-down screen

Clean the display screen by applying a small amount of water or any ammonia-based household glass cleaner directly to a soft cloth. Rub the screen gently until the dust, dirt or fingerprints are removed. Do not spray the screen directly with water or glass cleaning solvents. Overspray from these fluids could drip down into the internal electronics of the screen and cause damage. Do not apply excessive pressure while cleaning the screen.

Cleaning DVD and CD discs

Inspect all discs for contamination before playing. If necessary, clean discs only with an approved DVD and CD cleaner and wipe from the center out to the edge. Do not use circular motion.

Compatibility with aftermarket audio systems (headphone only mode)

When the Family Entertainment System (FES) detects that the original radio supplied by Ford Motor Company has been removed from the vehicle, the FES will work in a state referred to as “Headphone Only Mode.” This mode allows the FES to operate as a standalone system, without interface to the radio.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

While operating in Headphone Only Mode, the system will have limited functionality.

- The system will only output audio to the headphones. It will not be capable of providing audio to the speakers.
- The available sources in FES Headphone Only Mode are DVD-DISC and DVD-AUX, regardless of headphone channel (A or B).
- When a disc is inserted into the FES while in Headphone Only Mode, both headphone channels (A and B) will be connected to FES-DISC.

NAVIGATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

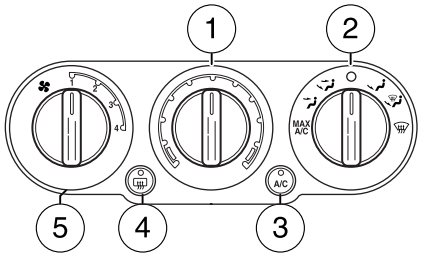
Your vehicle may be equipped with a Navigation System. Refer to the *Navigation supplement* for further information.

SYNC (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with SYNC, a hands-free communications and entertainment system with special phone and media features. For more information, please refer to the *SYNC supplement* or to the *SYNC* section in the *Navigation supplement* (if equipped).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

MANUAL HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. **Temperature selection:** Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

2. **Air flow selections:** Controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. See the following for a brief description on each control.

Max A/C: Distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel vents to cool the vehicle. This recooling of the interior air is more economical and efficient. Recirculated air may also help reduce undesirable odors from entering the vehicle.

: Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents.

: Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents and the floor vents.

O (OFF): Outside air is shut out and the fan will not operate.

: Distributes outside air through the floor vents. **Note:** Some airflow will come out of the small vents near the side windows.

: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and floor vents. **Note:** Some airflow will come out of the small vents near the side windows.

: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents.

3. **A/C:** Uses outside air to cool the vehicle. Air flows primarily from the instrument panel register vents.

4. **Rear defroster:** Clears ice and fog from the rear window.

5. **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle, do not drive with the air flow selector in the O (OFF) position.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down when the vehicle interior is significantly warmer than the outside temperature, drive with the windows slightly open for 2–3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out.”
- During extreme high ambient temperatures when idling stationary for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the MAX A/C position, turn off the rear A/C unit, reduce blower fan speed from the highest setting and put the vehicle’s transmission into the P (Park) position to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

For maximum cooling performance in panel ( ) mode:

- Select MAX A/C mode. MAX A/C uses recirculated air with A/C to provide a cooler airflow.
- Move the temperature control to the coolest setting.
- Set the fan to the highest speed initially, then adjust in order to maintain comfort.

To allow side window defogging and demisting while warming up the vehicle cabin:

1. Select .
2. Select A/C.
3. Set the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows. To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

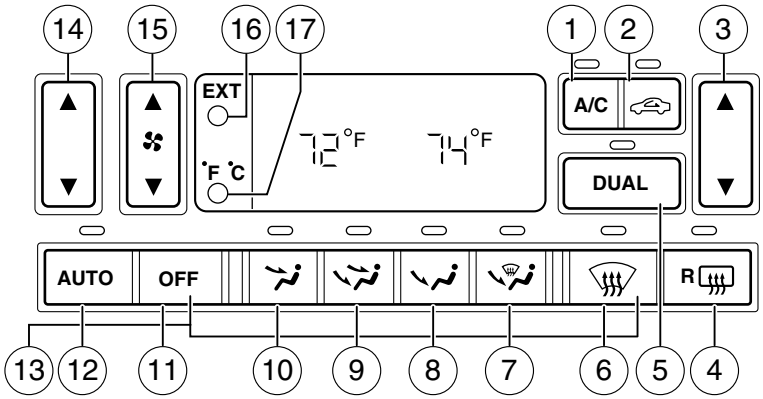
To allow windshield defogging and demisting while warming up vehicle:

1. Select floor/defrost mode.
2. Set temperature control to maintain comfort.
3. Set fan to highest setting.

Do not place objects on top of the instrument panel as these objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

DUAL AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (DATC) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. **A/C control:** Manually turns A/C on or off.

2. **Recirculation control:** Cools the vehicle more quickly by recirculating the cabin air instead of using outside air and helps prevent unpleasant outside odors or fumes from entering the vehicle. Press to turn on/off.

3. **Passenger side temperature control:** Controls the temperature on the passenger side of the vehicle when in dual zone mode. To enter dual zone, press the passenger temperature control or DUAL. The passenger temperature will appear in the display.

4. **Rear defroster control:** Removes ice and fog from the rear window. Press to turn on/off.

5. **DUAL** (Single/dual electric temperature control): Allows the driver to have full control of the cabin temperature settings (single zone) or allows the passenger to have control of their individual temperature settings (dual zone control). Press to turn on dual zone mode, press again to return to single zone.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

6. : Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents.

7. : Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and floor vents. **Note:** Some airflow will come out of the small vents near the side windows.

8. : Distributes air through the floor vents. **Note:** Some airflow will come out of the small vents near the side windows.

9. : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents and the floor vents.

10. : Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.

11. **OFF:** Outside air is shut out and the fan will not operate. **Note:** If equipped with the auxiliary system, the auxiliary fan can still operate with the front system off.

12. **AUTO:** Press to select the desired temperature shown in the display window. The system will automatically determine the fan speed, the direction of the airflow, outside or recirculated air to heat or cool the vehicle to the selected temperature.

13. **Manual override controls:** Allows you to manually determine where airflow is directed. To return to fully automatic control, press AUTO.

14. **Driver's side temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the vehicle cabin. When DUAL zone is pressed, controls the driver's side temperature.

15. **Fan Speed:** Manually increases or decreases the fan speed.

16. **EXT:** Displays the outside air temperature. It will remain displayed until the EXT control is pressed again. The external temperature will be most accurate when the vehicle has been moving for a period of time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

17. **Temperature conversion:**
Press to toggle between Fahrenheit and Celsius temperature on the DATC display only. The set point temperatures in Celsius will be displayed in half-degree increments.

Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle, do not drive with the air flow selector in OFF or with recirculated air engaged.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2–3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out.”
- During extreme high ambient temperatures when idling stationary for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the MAX A/C position, turn off the rear A/C unit, reduce blower fan speed from the highest setting and put the vehicle’s transmission into the P (Park) position to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

For maximum cooling performance:

- Select and A/C and recirculated air. Use recirculated air with A/C to provide a cooler airflow.
- Move the temperature control to the coolest setting.

To allow side window defogging and demisting while warming up the vehicle cabin:

1. Select .
2. Select A/C.
3. Set the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows. To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

Do not place objects on top of the instrument panel as these objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop.

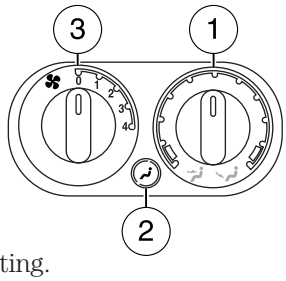
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

AUXILIARY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an auxiliary climate system. These auxiliary controls, located in the overhead console, allow the front passengers to control airflow direction, temperature and fan level of the rear compartment to quickly heat or cool the entire vehicle.

Front auxiliary controls:

1. **Temperature control:**
Determines temperature level.



2. **Mode selector:** Press to select air flow direction to (floor) or (panel).

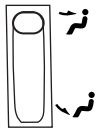
- directs air to the floor of the third row seating.
- directs air to the overhead registers of the second and third row seating.

The selected mode will illuminate on the temperature control.

3. **Fan control:** Determines fan speed levels. If your vehicle is equipped with the front Dual Automatic Temperature Control (DATC) system, when the front system is turned off, the fan and heat mode will operate and A/C will be unavailable.

FLOOR CONSOLE CLIMATE CONTROLS

Controls the direction of the airflow to the rear of the vehicle.



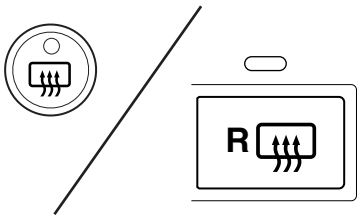
- directs air flow primarily through the console panel register.
- directs air flow through the console floor register.

REAR WINDOW DEFROSTER

The rear defroster control is located on the instrument panel.

Press the rear defroster control to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog.

- A small LED will illuminate when the rear defroster is activated.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The ignition must be in the 3 (ON) position to operate the rear window defroster.

The defroster turns off automatically after 10 minutes or when the ignition is turned to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) or 2 (ACC) position. To manually turn off the defroster before 10 minutes have passed, push the control again.

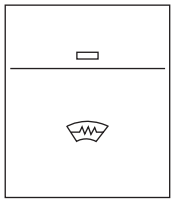
Heated Windshield Control (if equipped)

The heated windshield control is located on the instrument panel just under the climate controls.

To activate the heated windshield, the engine must be running while the heated windshield control is pushed. Once activated, a small light on the button will illuminate.

Note: During initial start-up, the windshield may have a shimmering appearance. This is normal operation and will only last for approximately 1 minute.

The heated windshield will turn off automatically after:



- a period of up to 8 minutes, when the outside air temperature is below 40°F (4°C),
- a period of up to 4 minutes when the outside air temperature is 40°F (4°C) or above, or
- when the engine is turned off.

To manually turn off the heated windshield before the specified time has passed, push the control switch again.

Note: Pushing the heated windshield button to activate the system will increase engine idle speed when the engine is warm and is already at or near its warmed up idle rpm. No increase in engine rpm will be noticed if the engine is cold and running at higher rpms associated with cold starts. This rpm increase is required to provide adequate power from the alternator to the heated windshield and maintain power to the other electrical functions in the vehicle.

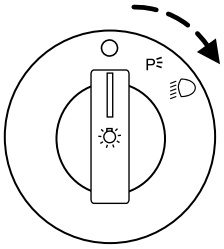
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

HEADLAMP CONTROL

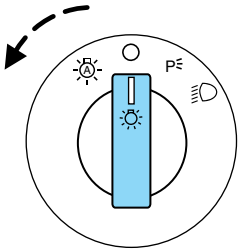
◯ Turns the lamps off.

Turns on the parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

Turns the headlamps on.



Autolamp Control (if equipped)



The autolamp control sets the headlamps to turn on and off automatically. The autolamp control, located on the headlamp control, may be set to:

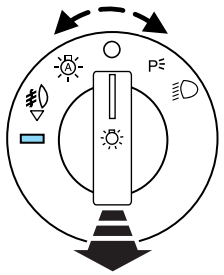
- turn on the lamps automatically at night
- turn off the lamps automatically during the daylight
- keep the lamps on for up to three minutes after the key is turned to OFF.

To turn the autolamps on, rotate the control counterclockwise to .

Fog lamp control

The fog lamps can be turned on only when the headlamp control is in the , or position and the high beams are not turned on.

Pull headlamp control towards you to turn fog lamps on. The fog lamp indicator light below the icon will illuminate when fog lamp is activated.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Push the headlamp control towards the instrument panel to deactivate the fog lamps.

Daytime running lamps (DRL) (if equipped)

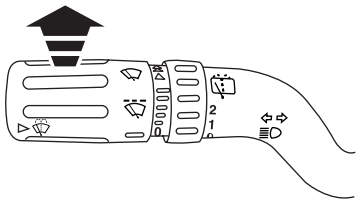
To activate DRL:

- the ignition must be in the ON position and
- the headlamp control is in the ○ or P position
- the transmission is not in park.

Always remember to turn on your headlamps at dusk or during inclement weather. The Daytime Running Light (DRL) System does not activate your tail lamps and generally may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

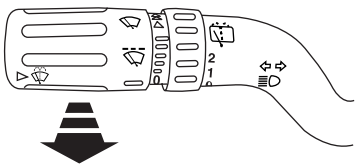
High beams

Push the lever toward the instrument panel to activate. Pull the lever towards you to deactivate.



Flash to pass

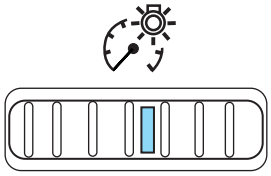
Pull the lever toward you to activate. Release the lever to deactivate.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

PANEL DIMMER CONTROL

Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel when exterior lights are on.



- Rotate the thumbwheel from left to right to brighten the instrument panel.
- Rotate the thumbwheel from right to left to dim the instrument panel.
- Rotate fully to the right (past detent) to turn on interior lamps.
- Rotate to the left position (past detent) to turn off the interior lamps and to disable the illuminated entry feature. When the control is in the far left position, it acts as a dome lamp defeat/override.

Note: If the battery is disconnected, discharged, or a new battery is installed, the dimmer switch requires re-calibration. Rotate the dimmer switch from the full dim position to the full Dome/ON position to reset. This will ensure that your displays are visible under all lighting conditions.

AIMING THE HEADLAMPS

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed before leaving the assembly plant. If your vehicle is involved in an accident or if you have problems fixing the alignment of your headlamps, have them checked by a qualified service technician.

Headlamp aim adjustment

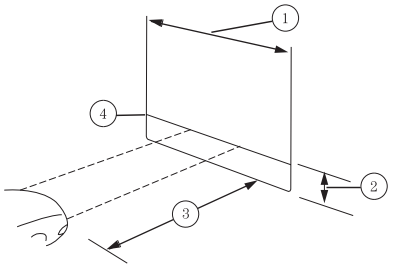
The headlamps on your vehicle can only be vertically adjusted. Your vehicle does not require horizontal aim adjustments.

To adjust the headlamps:

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface about 25 feet (7.6 meters) away from a vertical plain surface (3). Check your headlamp alignment at night or in a dark area so that you can see the headlamp beam pattern.

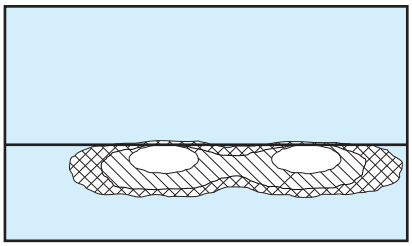
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- (1) Eight feet
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) Twenty-five feet
- (4) Horizontal reference line



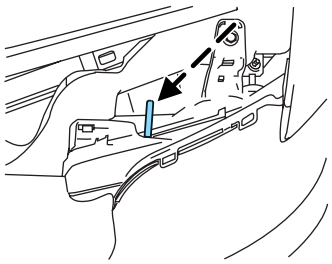
2. The center of the headlamp has a 3.0 mm circle on the lens. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp to the ground (2) and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) long horizontal line on the plain surface (1) at this height (masking tape works well).

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps. The brightest part of the light should be below the horizontal line (4). If it is above the line the headlamp will need to be adjusted.



4. Open the hood.

5. Locate the vertical adjuster for each headlamp. Adjust the aim by turning the adjuster control either clockwise (to adjust down) or counterclockwise (to adjust up).



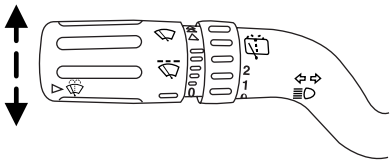
Note: Use a 4 mm socket or box wrench to turn the vertical adjuster control.

6. Horizontal aiming is not required for this vehicle and is non-adjustable.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

TURN SIGNAL CONTROL

- Push down to activate the left turn signal.
- Push up to activate the right turn signal.

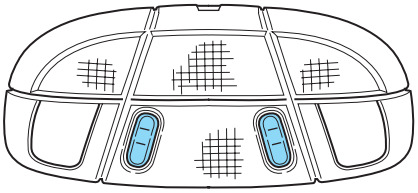


INTERIOR LAMPS

Dome/reading lamps

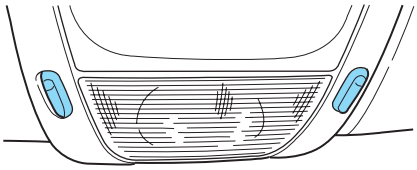
The dome lamp lights when:

- any door is opened.
- the instrument panel dimmer switch is rotated up until the courtesy lamps come on.
- any of the remote entry controls are pressed and the ignition is OFF.



The reading portion, the two outer lights, can only be toggled on and off at the lamp.

The front map lamps are located in the overhead console (if equipped). Press the controls on either side of each map lamp to activate the lamps.

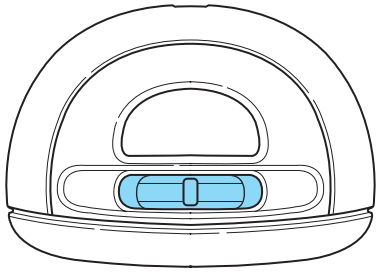


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cargo/reading lamps

The dome portion of the lamp or the center light can be turned on when the panel dimmer control is rotated fully up or when a door is opened.

The rear dome lamp can be turned ON or OFF by sliding the control.



BULB REPLACEMENT

Headlamp Condensation

The headlamps are vented to equalize pressure. When moist air enters the headlamp(s) through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur. This condensation is normal and will clear within 45 minutes of headlamp operation.

Using the right bulbs

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized "D.O.T." for North America and an "E" for Europe to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. Using incorrect bulbs may damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty or may not provide quality bulb burn time.

Function	Number of bulbs	Trade number
Headlamp low & high beam	2	H13
Front park/turn lamp	2	3457 NAK (amber)
Side park/turn lamp	2	194
Upper rear tail lamp	2	194
Rear backup lamp	2	921
Lower rear stop/tail/turn lamp	2	4057K
High-mount stop lamps	5	W5WL
Rear license plate lamps	2	168
Front fog lamp	2	9145

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Function	Number of bulbs	Trade number
Cargo lamp	1	211-2
Interior overhead lamp	1	912 (906)
Front door courtesy lamp	1	168
Map lamps	2	168 (T10)
Ashtray lamp	1	161
All replacement bulbs are clear in color except where noted.		
To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer .		

Replacing exterior bulbs

Check the operation of all the bulbs frequently.

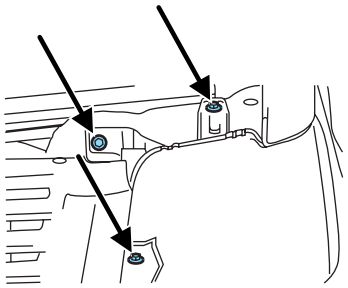
Replacing the interior bulbs

Check the operation of the bulbs frequently. To replace any of the interior bulbs, see a dealer or qualified technician.

Replacing headlamp bulbs

Do not touch the glass of a halogen bulb.

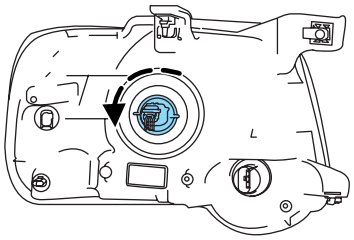
1. Turn off the headlamps and open the hood.
2. Remove three screws from the headlamp assembly and pull headlamp forward.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Disconnect the electrical connector.

4. Remove the old bulb by turning counterclockwise and pull it out.



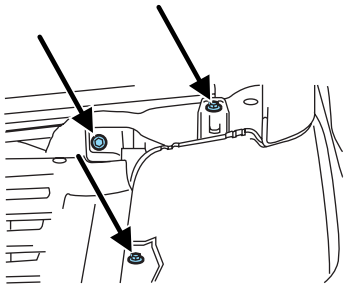
Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Reverse steps to reinstall bulb(s).

Replacing front parking lamp/turn signal/sidemarker bulbs

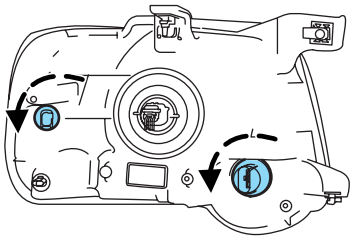
1. Turn off the headlamps and open the hood.

2. Remove three screws from the headlamp assembly and pull headlamp forward.



3. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.

4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

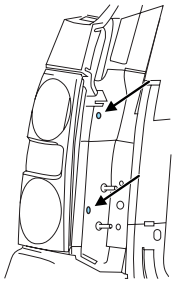


Reverse steps to reinstall bulb(s).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

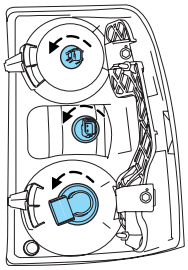
Replacing tail/brake/turn/backup lamp bulbs

1. Turn the headlamp switch to OFF and open the liftgate.
2. Remove the two bolts from the lamp assembly.
3. Remove the lamp assembly.



4. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the lamp assembly.
5. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

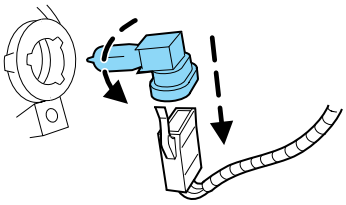
Reverse steps to reinstall bulb(s).



Replacing fog lamp bulbs

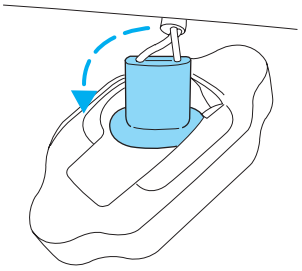
1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the OFF position.
2. Remove the bulb socket from the fog lamp by turning it counterclockwise.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.

Reverse steps to reinstall bulb(s).



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing license plate lamp bulbs



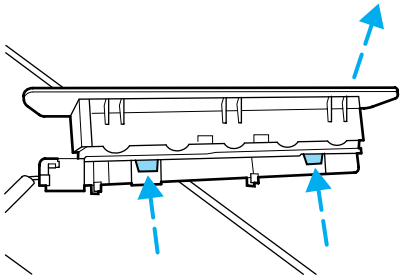
1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the OFF position.
2. Remove the lamp assembly by depressing the small tab and rocking the lamp assembly out.
3. Remove the bulb socket from the lamp assembly by turning counterclockwise and pull the bulb straight out.

Reverse steps to reinstall bulb(s).

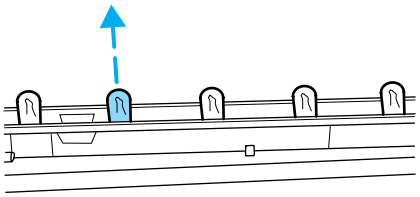
Replacing high-mount brakelamp bulb

1. Remove the two screws and lamp assembly away from the vehicle.

2. Remove the bulb holder from the lamp assembly by depressing the snaps.



3. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb.

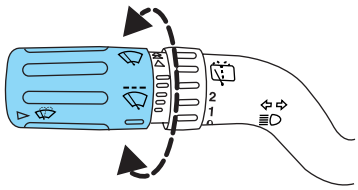


Reverse steps to reinstall bulb(s).

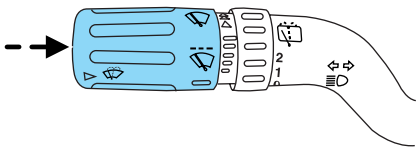
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER

Windshield wiper: Rotate the end of the control away from you to increase the speed of the wipers; rotate towards you to decrease the speed of the wipers.



Windshield washer: Push the end of the stalk:



- briefly: causes a single swipe of the wipers without washer fluid.
- a quick push and hold: the wipers will swipe three times with washer fluid.
- a long push and hold: the wipers and washer fluid will be activated for up to ten seconds.

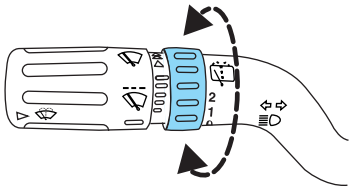
Note: Do not operate the washer when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat. Check the washer fluid level frequently. Do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield, always use the windshield washer. In freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers.

Windshield wiper features (if equipped with Autolamp feature)

The exterior lamps will turn on with the ignition on, headlamp control in the Autolamp position and the windshield wipers are turned on (for a fixed period of time).

Rear window wiper/washer controls

For rear wiper operation, rotate the rear window wiper and washer control to the desired position. Select:



INT 1 — 8–10 second interval rear wiper.

INT 2 — 3–4 second interval rear wiper.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

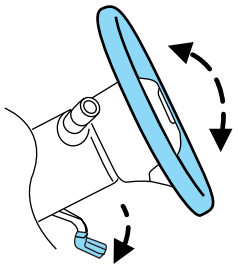
OFF — Rear wiper and washer off.

For rear wash cycle, rotate (and hold as desired) the rear wiper/washer control to either position.

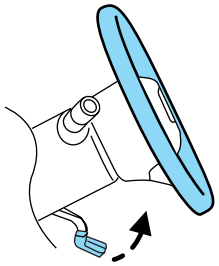
From either position, the control will automatically return to the INT 2 or OFF position.

TILT STEERING COLUMN

Pull the lever down and release, to unlock the steering column tilt lock. With the lever in the down position, tilt the steering column and wheel to its desired orientation. Do not push or pull the lever while tilting the wheel.



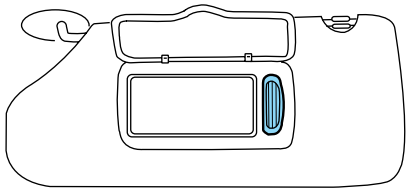
Lift the lever back to its original position to lock the steering column.



Never adjust the steering column when the vehicle is moving.

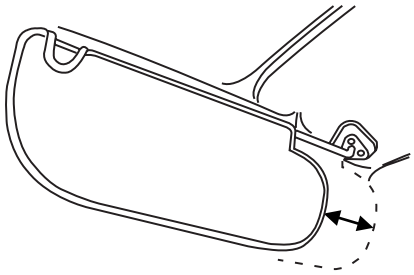
ILLUMINATED VISOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

Lift the mirror cover to turn on the visor mirror lamps.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Slide on rod feature



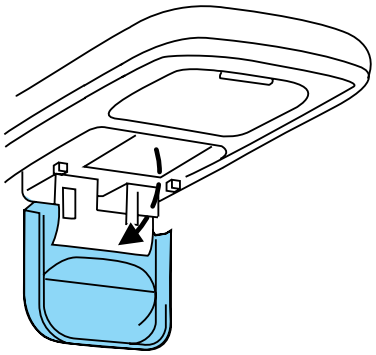
Rotate the visor towards the side window and extend it rearward for additional sunlight coverage.

Note: To stow the visor back into the headliner, visor must be retracted before moving it back towards the windshield.

OVERHEAD CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)

The appearance of your vehicle's overhead console will vary according to your option package.

Storage compartment



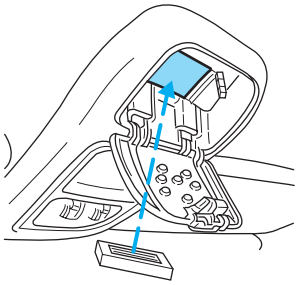
Press the latch to open the storage compartment.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

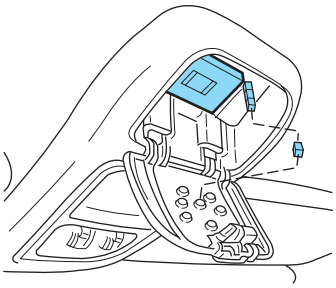
Installing a garage door opener (if equipped)

The storage compartment can be converted to accommodate a variety of aftermarket garage door openers:

- Place the VELCRO® hook onto the side of the aftermarket transmitter opposite of the button.
- Place the transmitter into storage compartment, button down.

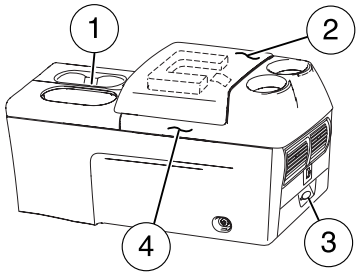


- Place the provided height adaptors onto the back of the door as needed.
- Close the door.
- Press the depression in the door to activate the transmitter.



CENTER CONSOLE

1. Cupholders
2. Tissue holder in lid
3. Rear power point
4. Large utility compartment has an exterior power point in front of the lid, and inside the compartment has coin holder slots, a power point, AIJ (Audio Input Jack), USB port and a business/credit card holder



The rear side of the console may incorporate the following features:

- Air vents
- Cupholders

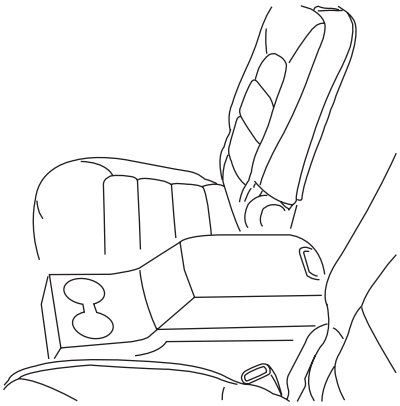
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

Rear center console features (if equipped)

The rear center console incorporates the following features:

- Utility compartment
- Cupholders
- Flip forward armrest to provide a flat load floor

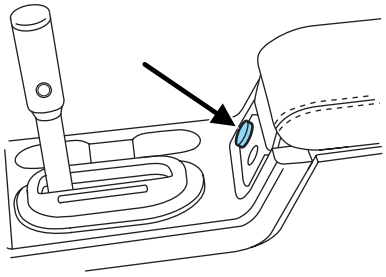


AUXILIARY POWER POINTS (12VDC)

Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlet as this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

The auxiliary power points are located on the front of the center console, inside the utility compartment, and on the rear of the console (accessible from the rear seats).

Do not use the power point for operating the cigarette lighter element (if equipped).



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the power point(s) over the vehicle capacity of 12 VDC/180W. If the power point or cigar lighter socket is not working, a fuse may have blown. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter for information on checking and replacing fuses.

To have full capacity usage of your power point, the engine is required to be running to avoid unintentional discharge of the battery. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running,
- do not leave battery chargers, video game adapters, computers and other devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

Always keep the power point caps closed when not being used.

Cigar/Cigarette lighter (if equipped)

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigarette lighter socket.

Do not hold the lighter in with your hand while it is heating, this will damage the lighter element and socket. The lighter will be released from its heating position when it is ready to be used.

Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

POWER WINDOWS

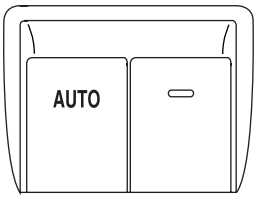
Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Press and pull the window switches to open and close windows.

- Push down (to the first detent) and hold the switch to open.
- Pull up (to the first detent) and hold the switch to close.



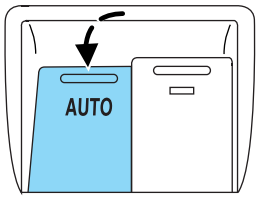
Rear Window Buffeting: When one or both of the rear windows are open, the vehicle may demonstrate a wind throb or buffeting noise. This noise can be alleviated by lowering a front window approximately two to three inches.

One touch up (if equipped) or down (Driver's window only)

This feature allows the driver's window to open or close fully without holding the control down.

To operate ONE TOUCH DOWN:

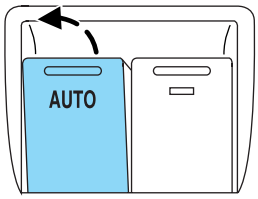
- Press the switch completely down to the second detent and release quickly. The window will open fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.



If the switch is pressed and held to the normal close or ONE TOUCH UP (if equipped) position during a ONE TOUCH DOWN event, the window will stop. If, after 1/2 second the switch is still held, the window will perform a normal close or ONE TOUCH UP (if equipped).

To operate ONE TOUCH UP (if equipped):

- Pull the switch completely up to the second detent and release quickly. The window will close fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.

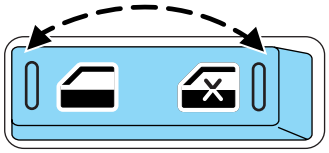


If the switch is pressed and held to the normal open or ONE TOUCH DOWN position during a ONE TOUCH UP event, the window will stop. If, after 1/2 second the switch is still held, the window will perform a normal open or ONE TOUCH DOWN.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Window lock

The window lock feature allows only the driver to operate the power windows.



To lock out all the window controls (except for the driver's) press the right side of the control. Press the left side to restore the window controls.

Bounce-Back (Driver's window only)

When an obstacle has been detected in the window opening as the window is moving upward, the window will automatically reverse direction and move down. This is known as "bounce-back". If the ignition is turned OFF (without accessory delay being active) during bounce-back, the window will move down until the bounce back position is reached.

Security Override

If during a bounce-back condition, the switch is released to the neutral position, then held in the one touch up position within two seconds after the window reaches the bounce-back position, **the window will travel up with no bounce-back protection.** If the switch is released before the window reaches fully closed or the ignition is turned OFF (without accessory delay being active), the window will stop. Security override can be used if the window movement is restricted in some way, for example, if there is ice on the window or seals.

Accessory delay

With accessory delay, the audio system, power windows and moon roof (if equipped) operate for up to ten minutes after the ignition switch is turned from the ON to the OFF position or until either front door is opened.

INTERIOR MIRROR

The interior rear view mirror has two pivot points on the support arm which lets you adjust the mirror UP or DOWN and from SIDE to SIDE.

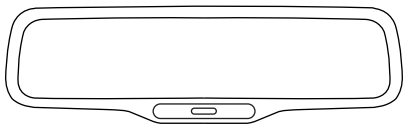
Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

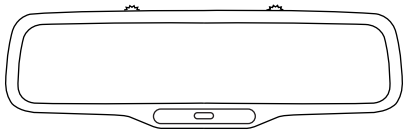
Automatic dimming interior rear view mirror (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an interior rear view mirror which has an auto-dimming function. The electronic day/night mirror will change from the normal (high reflective) state to the non-glare (darkened) state when bright lights (glare) reach the mirror. When the mirror detects bright light from behind the vehicle, it will automatically adjust (darken) to minimize glare.

Without voice activated Navigation System or SYNC



With voice activated Navigation System or SYNC



The mirror will automatically return to the normal state whenever the vehicle is placed in R (Reverse) to ensure a bright clear view when backing up.

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the interior rear view mirror since this may impair proper mirror performance.

Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

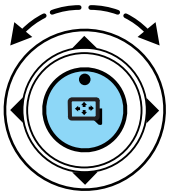
Power side view mirrors

Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

The ignition must be in the ACC or ON position to adjust the power side view mirrors.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

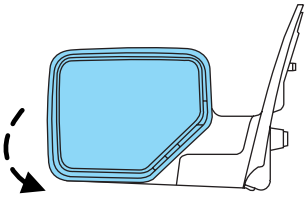
To adjust your mirrors:



1. Rotate the control clockwise to adjust the right mirror and rotate the control counterclockwise to adjust the left mirror.
2. Move the control in the direction you wish to tilt the mirror.
3. Return to the center position to lock mirrors in place.

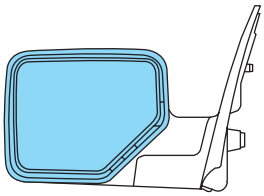
Fold-away mirrors

Fold the side mirrors in carefully when driving through a narrow space, like an automatic car wash.



Heated outside mirrors (if equipped)

Both mirrors are heated automatically to remove ice, mist and fog when the rear window defrost is activated.



Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.

POWER ADJUSTABLE FOOT PEDALS (IF EQUIPPED)

The accelerator and brake pedal should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stopped and the gearshift lever is in the P (Park) position.

Press and hold the rocker control to adjust accelerator and brake pedal toward you or away from you.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The adjustment allows for approximately 3 inches (73 mm) of maximum travel.

Never adjust the accelerator and brake pedal with feet on the pedals while the vehicle is moving.

SPEED CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

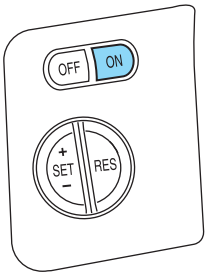
With speed control set, you can maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Do not use the speed control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

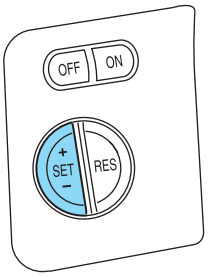
Setting speed control

The controls for using your speed control are located on the steering wheel for your convenience.

1. Press the ON control and release it.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.



3. Press the SET + control and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
5. The indicator light on the instrument cluster will turn on.



Note:

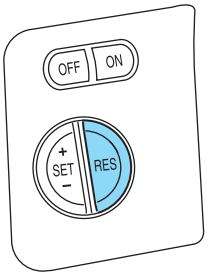
- Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up and down a steep hill.
- If the vehicle speed increases above the set speed on a downhill, you may want to apply the brakes to reduce the speed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- If the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed on an uphill, your speed control will disengage.

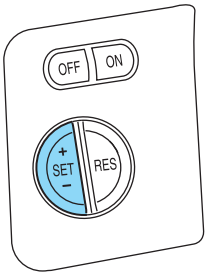
Resuming a set speed

Press the RES (resume) control and release it. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed.



Increasing speed while using speed control

There are two ways to set a higher speed:

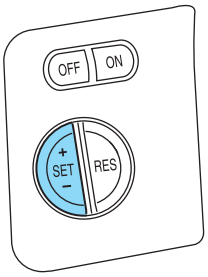


- Press and hold the SET + control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the SET + control to operate the Tap-Up function. Press and release this control to increase the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the desired speed. When the vehicle reaches that speed press and release the SET + control.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reducing speed while using speed control

There are two ways to reduce a set speed:

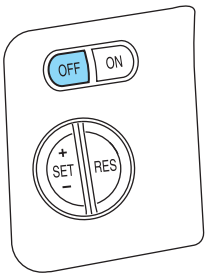


- Press and hold the SET - control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the SET - control to operate the Tap-Down function. Press and release this control to decrease the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Depress the brake pedal until the desired vehicle speed is reached, press the SET + control.

Turning off speed control

There are two ways to turn off the speed control:

- Depress the brake pedal. This will not erase your vehicle's previously set speed.
- Press the speed control OFF control.



Note: When you turn off the speed control or the ignition, your speed control set speed memory is erased.

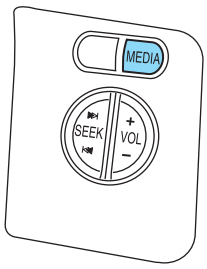
STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The drivers primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use steering wheel controls and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

These controls allow you to operate some radio control features.

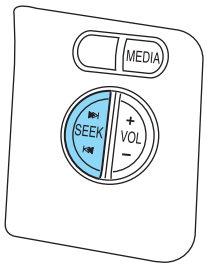
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Audio control features



Press MEDIA to select:

- AM, FM1, FM2
- SAT1, SAT2 or SAT3 (Satellite Radio mode if equipped).
- CD (if equipped)
- DVD/FES (if equipped)
- LINE IN (Auxiliary input jack)



In AM, FM1, or FM2 mode:

- Press ⏮ SEEK ⏭ to select preset stations within the selected radio band or press and hold to select the next/previous radio frequency.

In Satellite radio mode (if equipped):

- Press ⏮ SEEK ⏭ to advance through preset channels.

In CD mode (if equipped):

- Press ⏮ SEEK ⏭ to select the next selection on the CD/USB or press and hold to forward or reverse through the CD/USB.

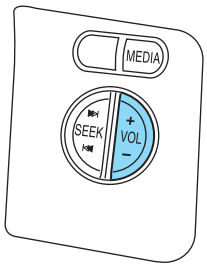
In DVD mode (if equipped):

- Refer to the *Family entertainment DVD system* in the *Entertainment systems* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

In any mode:

- Press VOL + or – to adjust volume.

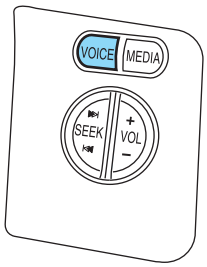


Navigation system hands free control features (if equipped)

Press and hold VOICE briefly until the voice icon appears on the Navigation display to use the voice command feature.

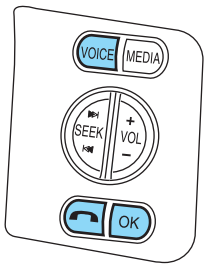
Press VOICE to complete a voice command.

For further information on the Navigation system, refer to the *Navigation supplement.*



SYNC system hands free control feature (if equipped)

Press VOICE briefly until the voice icon appears on the display to use the voice command feature. You will hear a tone and LISTENING will appear in the radio display. Press and hold VOICE to exit voice command.



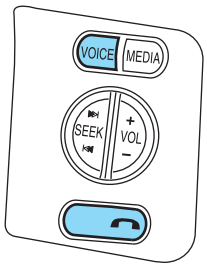
Press to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold to end call or exit phone mode.

Press to scroll through various menus and selections. Press OK to confirm your selection.

For further information on the SYNC system, refer to the *SYNC supplement.*

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Navigation system/SYNC hands free control features (if equipped)



Press VOICE briefly until the voice icon appears on the Navigation display to use the voice command feature.

Press to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold to exit phone mode or end call.

For further information on the Navigation system/SYNC system, refer to the *Navigation and SYNC supplements*.

MOON ROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

You can move the glass panel of the moon roof back to open or tilt up (from the closed position) to ventilate the vehicle.

Do not let children play with the moon roof or leave children unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

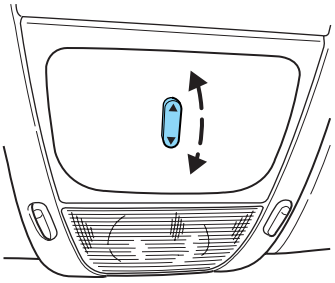
When closing the moon roof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the moon roof opening.

To open the moon roof:

The moon roof is equipped with an automatic, one-touch, express opening feature. Press and release the rear portion of the control. To stop motion at any time during the one-touch opening, press the control again.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To close the moon roof:



The moon roof is equipped with an automatic, one-touch, express closing feature. Press and release the front portion of the control. To stop motion at any time during the one-touch closing, press the control again.

Bounce back: When an obstacle has been detected in the moon roof opening as the moon roof is closing, the moon roof will automatically open and stop at a prescribed position.

Bounce back override: To override bounce back, within 2 seconds after reaching bounce back position, if the switch is held in the close position the moon roof will close with a 20–25 percent increase of closing force before it will bounce back again. If the switch is released before the moon roof reaches fully closed position, the moon roof will stop. For example: Bounce Back Override can be used to overcome the resistance of ice on the moon roof or seals.

To vent:

- To tilt the moon roof into the vent position (when the glass panel is closed), press and hold the front portion of the control.
- To close the moon roof from the vent position, press and hold the rear portion of the control until the glass panel stops moving.

The moon roof has a sliding shade that can be opened or closed when the glass panel is shut. To close the shade, pull it toward the front of the vehicle.

Accessory delay:

With accessory delay, the window switches, audio system, and moon roof (if equipped) may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned to the OFF position or until either front door is opened.

HOMELINK® WIRELESS CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The HomeLink® Wireless Control System, located on the overhead console, provides a convenient way to replace up to three hand-held transmitters with a single built-in device. This feature will learn the radio frequency codes of most transmitters to operate garage doors, entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks, and home or office lighting.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When programming your HomeLink® Wireless Control System to a garage door or gate, be sure that people and objects are out of the way to prevent potential injury or damage.

Do not use the HomeLink® Wireless Control System with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. federal safety standards (this includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current U.S. federal safety standards. For more information, contact HomeLink® at: **www.homelink.com** or **1–800–355–3515.**

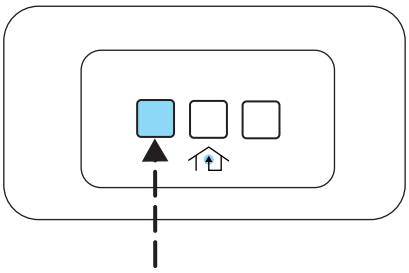
Retain the original transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future programming procedures (i.e. new HomeLink® equipped vehicle purchase). It is also suggested that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed Homelink® buttons be erased for security purposes, refer to *Programming* in this section.

Programming

Do not program HomeLink® with the vehicle parked in the garage.

Note: Some vehicles may require the ignition switch to be turned to the second (or "ACC") position for programming and/or operation of the HomeLink®. It is also recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device being programmed to HomeLink® for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

1. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter 1–3 inches (2–8 cm) away from the HomeLink® button you wish to program (located on your overhead console) while keeping the indicator light in view.



2. Simultaneously press and hold both the chosen HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapidly blinking light. Now you may release both the HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons.

Note: Some entry gates and garage door openers may require you to replace Step 2 with procedures noted in the "Gate Operator and Canadian Programming" section for Canadian residents.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Firmly **press, hold for five seconds and release** the programmed HomeLink® button up to two separate times to activate the door. If the door does not activate, press and hold the just-trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light.
• If the indicator light **stays on constantly, programming is complete** and your device should activate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.
• If the indicator light blinks **rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light continue with "Programming" Steps 4 through 6** to complete programming of a rolling code equipped device (most commonly a garage door opener).

4. At the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit) in the garage, locate the "learn" or "smart" button (usually near where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the unit).

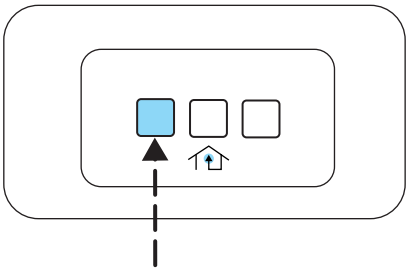
5. Firmly press and release the "learn" or "smart" button. (The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.)

Note: There are 30 seconds in which to initiate Step 6.

6. Return to the vehicle and firmly **press, hold for two seconds and release** the HomeLink® button. Repeat the **press/hold/release** sequence again and, depending on the brand of the garage door opener (or other rolling code equipped device), repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming.

HomeLink® should now activate your rolling code equipped device. To program additional HomeLink® buttons begin with Step 1 in the "Programming" section. For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink at **www.homelink.com** or **1–800–355–3515.**

Gate Operator & Canadian Programming



During programming, your hand-held transmitter may automatically stop transmitting — not allowing enough time for HomeLink® to accept the signal from the hand-held transmitter.

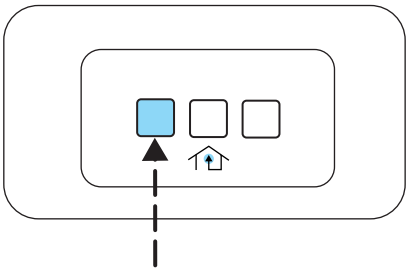
After completing Step 1 outlined in the *"Programming"* section, replace Step 2 with the following:

Note: If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised to unplug the device during the "cycling" process to prevent overheating.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

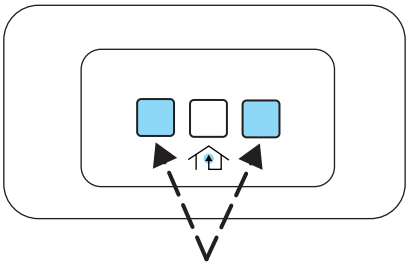
- Continue to press and hold the HomeLink® button (note Step 2 in the "Programming" section) while you press and release — **every two seconds** ("cycle") your hand-held transmitter until the frequency signal has been accepted by the HomeLink®. The indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly after HomeLink® accepts the radio frequency signal.
- Proceed with Step 3 in the "Programming" section.

Operating the HomeLink® Wireless Control System



To operate, simply press and release the appropriate HomeLink® button. Activation will now occur for the trained product (garage door, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, or home or office lighting etc.). For convenience, the hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time. In the event that there are still programming difficulties, contact HomeLink® at **www.homelink.com** or **1–800–355–3515.**

Erasing HomeLink® buttons



To erase the three programmed buttons (individual buttons cannot be erased):

- Press and hold the two outer HomeLink® buttons until the indicator light begins to flash-after 20 seconds. Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer that 30 seconds.

HomeLink® is now in the train (or learning) mode and can be programmed at any time beginning with Step 1 in the *"Programming"* section.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reprogramming a single HomeLink® button

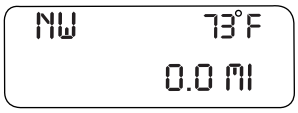
To program a device to HomeLink® using a HomeLink® button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. **Do NOT** release the button.

2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the HomeLink® button, follow Step 1 in the "Programming" section.

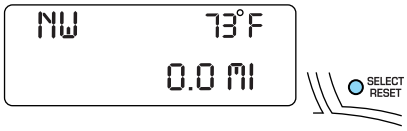
For questions or comments, contact HomeLink® at **www.homelink.com** or **1–800–355–3515.**

STANDARD MESSAGE CENTER (IF EQUIPPED)



With the ignition in the ON position, the message center, located on your instrument cluster, displays important vehicle information **through a constant monitor of vehicle systems.** You may select display features on the message center for a display of status. The system will also notify you of potential vehicle problems with a display of system warnings followed by an indicator chime.

Selectable features



Press and release the SELECT/RESET control switch to scroll and reset the following functions. Select or reset the function by holding the SELECT/RESET button for more than 2 seconds.

Info menu

This menu displays the following control displays:

- Odometer/Trip Odometer (Trip A and Trip B)
- Distance to Empty
- Average Fuel Economy
- Setup Menu

Odometer/Trip odometer

Refer to *Gauges* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Distance to empty (DTE)

Selecting this function from the INFO MENU estimates approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions. Remember to turn the ignition OFF when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

The DTE function will display LOW FUEL LEVEL and sound a tone for one second when you have approximately 50 miles (80 km) to empty. If you RESET this warning message, this display and tone will return within 10 minutes.

DTE is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is reinitialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

Average fuel economy (AFE)

Select this function to display your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/km.

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons of fuel used (liters of fuel used by 100 kilometers traveled), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.

2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press the SELECT/RESET control switch (press and hold for 2 seconds in order to reset the function) after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Setup menu

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET control switch to get to the SETUP MENU sequence from the INFO MENU for the following displays:

- AWD Lock (4.6 L engine vehicles only)
- System Check
- Units (English/Metric)
- Language
- Autolamp
- Autolock
- Autounlock
- Park Aid (if equipped)
- Oil Life Reset and Start Value

Briefly press the SELECT/RESET control switch to scroll through the SETUP MENU display sequence. If the SELECT/RESET control switch is not pressed within 4 seconds, the message center returns to the Info Menu.

AWD lock (4.6 L engine vehicles only)

Select this function from the SETUP MENU to display the AWD locked function.

1. Press the SELECT/RESET control for the current display mode.

2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET control within 4 seconds to turn the AWD system to the LOCKED mode.

3. Press the SELECT/RESET control switch for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO MENU.

Note: When the AWD system is in the LOCKED mode, the 4X4 indicator will be illuminated.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

System check

Press and hold the SELECT/RESET control switch to select SYSTEM CHECK when “SYSTEM CHECK HOLD RESET” is displayed in the message center. Selecting this function from the SETUP MENU causes the message center to cycle through each of the systems being monitored. For each of the monitored systems, the message center will indicate either an OK message or a warning message for two seconds.

Pressing the SELECT/RESET control switch cycles the message center through each of the systems being monitored.

The sequence of the system check report and how it appears in the message center is as follows:

1. OIL LIFE
2. CHARGING SYSTEM
3. WASHER FLUID
4. DOOR AJAR
5. EXTERIOR LAMP
6. BRAKE FLUID LEVEL
7. PARK BRAKE
8. MILES TO EMPTY
9. FUEL LEVEL LOW (will only display if 50 miles or less to empty)

Units (English/Metric)

1. Select this function from the SETUP MENU for the current units to be displayed.
2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET control switch to change from English to Metric.
3. Press the SELECT/RESET control switch for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO MENU.

Language

Note: When entering the SETUP MENU and a non-English language has been selected, “PRESS RESET FOR ENGLISH” will be displayed to change back to English.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Select this function from the SETUP MENU for the current language to be displayed.

2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET control to select a new language.

Selectable languages are English, Spanish, French, or Japanese.

3. Press the SELECT/RESET control switch for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO MENU.

Autolamp

This feature keeps your headlights on for up to three minutes after the ignition is switched off.

1. To change the time delay of the autolamp feature, select this function from the SETUP MENU.

2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET control switch to select the new Autolamp delay time (in seconds) values of 0, 10, 20, 30, 60, 90, 120 or 180 and wraps back to 0. Selecting 0 will result in no delay feature.

Note: ">" in front of a number indicates current selection.

3. Press the SELECT/RESET control switch for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO MENU.

Autolock

This feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when the vehicle is shifted into any gear and when the vehicle is in motion over 13 mph (20 km/h) or higher.

1. To disable/enable the autolock feature, select this function from the SETUP MENU.

2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET control switch to turn the autolock feature ON or OFF.

3. Press the SELECT/RESET control switch for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO MENU.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Autounlock

This feature automatically unlocks all vehicle doors when the driver's door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being turned off.

1. To disable/enable the autounlock feature, select this function from the SETUP MENU.

2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET control switch to turn the autounlock ON or OFF.

3. Press the SELECT/RESET control switch for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO MENU.

Reverse Sensing System (Park Aid) (if equipped)

This feature sounds a warning tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper, and functions only when R (Reverse) gear is selected.

1. To disable/enable the reverse sensing system feature with the vehicle in P (Park), select this function from the SETUP MENU or put the vehicle in R (Reverse).

2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET control switch to turn the park aid ON or OFF.

3. Press the SELECT/RESET control switch for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO MENU.

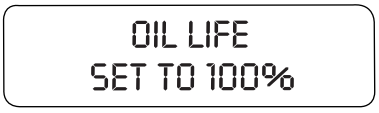
Oil Life Reset and Start Value

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change [approximately 7,500 miles (12,070 km) or 6 months] perform the following:

1. Select "HOLD RESET IF NEW OIL" from the SETUP MENU.

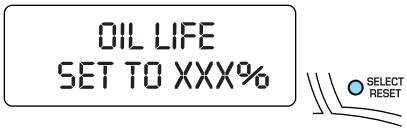
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Press and hold the SELECT/RESET control switch for more than 2 seconds. Oil life is set to 100% and “OIL LIFE SET TO 100%” is displayed.



Note: To change oil life 100% miles value from 7,500 miles (12,070 km) or 6 months to another value, proceed to step 3.

3. Once “OIL LIFE SET TO 100%” is displayed, release, press and hold the SELECT/RESET control switch for more than 2 seconds to change the Oil Life Start Value. Each release, press and hold will reduce the value by 10 percent.



4. After setting the Oil Life Start Value, press and release the SELECT/RESET control switch for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO MENU.

Note: Oil Life Start Value of 100% equals 7,500 miles (12,070 km) or 6 months. For example, setting Oil Life Start Value to 60% sets the Oil Life Start Value to 3,000 miles (4,828 km) and 120 days.

Compass display (if equipped)

The compass heading is displayed as one of N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W and NW in the message center display.

The compass reading may be affected when you drive near large buildings, bridges, power lines and powerful broadcast antenna. Magnetic or metallic objects placed in, on or near the vehicle may also affect compass accuracy.

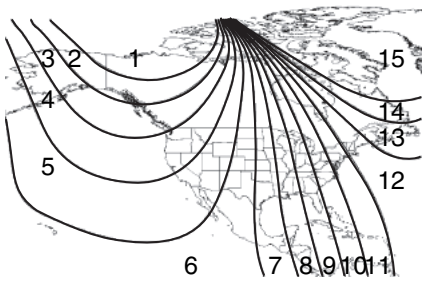
Usually, when something affects the compass readings, the compass will correct itself after a few days of operating your vehicle in normal conditions. If the compass still appears to be inaccurate, a manual calibration may be necessary. Refer to *Compass zone adjustment.*

Most geographic areas (zones) have a magnetic north compass point that varies slightly from the northerly direction on maps. This variation is up to four degrees between adjacent zones and will become noticeable as the vehicle crosses multiple zones. A correct zone setting will eliminate this error. Refer to *Compass calibration adjustment.*

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

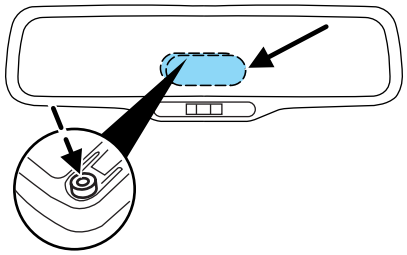
Compass zone adjustment (if equipped)

1. Determine which magnetic zone you are in for your geographic location by referring to the zone map.



2. Turn ignition to the ON position.

3. Locate the reset button on top of the compass sensor mounted behind the mirror.



4. Press and hold the reset button on the compass module for approximately 4 seconds until COMPASS ZONE XX appears in the message center display.

5. Continue to press the reset button until the correct zone appears in the message center display.

6. After 4 seconds ZONE XX IS SET will appear in the message center display.

7. The display will return to normal operation. The zone is now updated.

Compass calibration adjustment

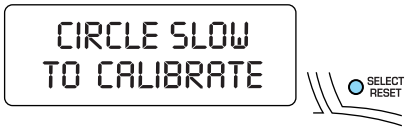
Perform compass calibration in an open area free from steel structures and high voltage lines. For optimum calibration, turn off all electrical accessories (heater/air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and make sure all vehicle doors are shut.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Start the vehicle.

2. Locate the reset button on the compass sensor mounted on the base of mirror.

3. To calibrate, press and hold the reset button on the compass module for approximately eight seconds and release.



4. Slowly drive the vehicle in a circle (less than 3 mph [5 km/h]) until the CIRCLE SLOW TO CALIBRATE display changes to CALIBRATION COMPLETED. It will take up to five circles to complete calibration.

5. The compass is now calibrated.

System warnings

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for 4 seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages. This allows you to use the full functionality of the message center after you acknowledge the warning by pressing the RESET control and clearing the warning message.

Warning messages are divided into four categories:

- They cannot be cleared until the condition is corrected.
- They will reappear on the display ten minutes from the reset if the condition has not been corrected.
- They will not reappear until an ignition OFF-ON cycle has been completed.
- They reappear if the condition clears then reoccurs within the same ignition ON-OFF cycle.

This acts as a reminder that these warning conditions still exist within the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning display	Status
Door ajar	Warning cannot be reset
Fuel level low	Warning returns after 10 minutes
Park brake engaged	
Check brake system	
Check park aid (if equipped)	Warning returns only after the ignition key is turned from OFF to ON.
Brake fluid level low	
Check headlamp	
Check highbeam lamp	
Check turn lamp	
Washer fluid level low	
Oil change required	
Engine oil change soon	
Liftgate/glass ajar	Warning returns after the condition has cleared then reoccurs within the same ignition ON-OFF cycle.
Clear objects by pass seat	
Check fuel fill inlet (if equipped)	
Check charging system	
Low tire pressure	
Tire monitor fault	
Tire sensor fault	
For 4x4 low stop vehicle (if equipped)	Temporary alert
For 4x4 low shift to N (if equipped)	
To exit 4x4 low stop vehicle (if equipped)	
To exit 4x4 low shift to N (if equipped)	

DOOR AJAR. Displayed when a door is not completely closed.

CLEAR OBJECTS BY PASS SEAT. Displayed when objects are by the passenger seat. After the objects are moved away from the seat, if the warning stays on or continues to come on contact your authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHECK FUEL FILL INLET (if equipped). Displayed when the fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed. Refer to *Capless fuel filler system* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

CHECK CHARGING SYSTEM. Displayed when the electrical system is not maintaining proper voltage when the engine is running. If you are operating electrical accessories when the engine is idling at a low speed, turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible. If the warning stays on or comes on when the engine is operating at normal speeds, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible.

FUEL LEVEL LOW. Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.

PARK BRAKE ENGAGED. Displayed when the manual park brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the park brake is released, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM. Displayed when the braking system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

CHECK PARK AID (if equipped). Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the Reverse Sensing System (Park Aid) is disabled. Refer to *Reverse Sensing System (Park Aid)* in this section to enable.

LOW TIRE PRESSURE. Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

TIRE MONITOR FAULT. Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

TIRE SENSOR FAULT. Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Understanding your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW. Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake Fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

CHECK HEADLAMP. Displayed when the headlamps are activated and at least one bulb is burned out. Check the lamps as soon as possible and have the burned out lamp replaced. Refer to *Replacing headlamp bulbs* in the *Lights* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHECK HIGHBEAM LAMP. Displayed when the highbeam lamps are activated and at least one bulb is burned out. Check the lamps as soon as possible and have the burned out lamp replaced. Refer to *Replacing headlamp bulbs* in the *Lights* chapter.

CHECK TURN LAMP. Displayed when the turn lamps are activated and at least one bulb is burned out. Check the lamps as soon as possible and have the burned out lamp replaced. Refer to *Replacing front parking lamp/turn signal/side marker bulbs* in the *Lights* chapter.

WASHER FLUID LEVEL LOW. Indicates the washer fluid reservoir is less than one quarter full. Check the washer fluid level. Refer to *Windshield washer fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

OIL CHANGE REQUIRED. Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 0%.

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule. USE ONLY RECOMMENDED ENGINE OILS.

ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON. Displayed when the engine oil life reaches 5% or less of the Oil Life Start Value.

LIFTGATE/GLASS AJAR. Displayed when the liftgate or the liftgate glass is not completely closed.

FOR 4X4 LOW STOP VEHICLE (if equipped). Displayed when 4X4 LOW is selected while the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to *Using the Control trac 4WD system* in the *Driving* chapter.

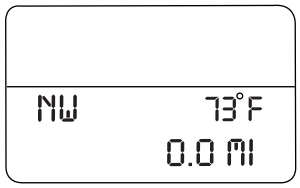
FOR 4X4 LOW SHIFT TO N (if equipped). Displayed when 4X4 LOW is selected and the vehicle is stopped. For more information, refer to *Using the Control trac 4WD system* in the *Driving* chapter.

TO EXIT 4X4 LOW STOP VEHICLE (if equipped). Displayed when 2WD is selected while the vehicle is operating in 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Using the Control trac 4WD system* in the *Driving* chapter.

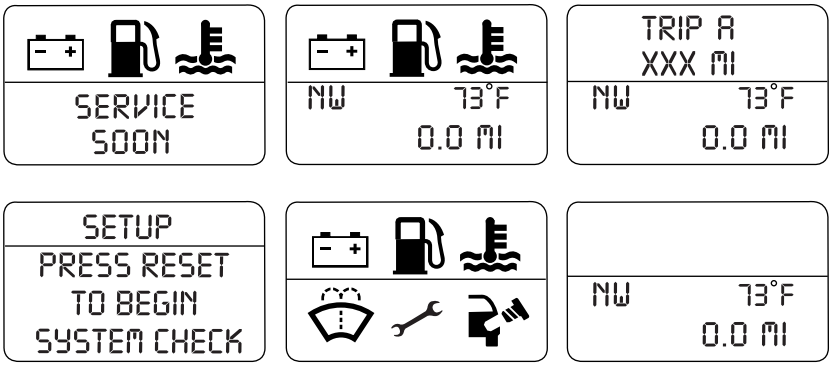
TO EXIT 4X4 LOW SHIFT TO N (if equipped). Displayed when 2WD is selected while the vehicle has been stopped in 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Using the Control trac 4WD system* in the *Driving* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

OPTIONAL MESSAGE CENTER (IF EQUIPPED)



With the ignition in the ON position, the message center, located on your instrument cluster, displays important vehicle information **through a constant monitor of vehicle systems.** You may select display features on the message center for a display of status. The system will also notify you of potential vehicle problems with a display of system warnings followed by an indicator chime.

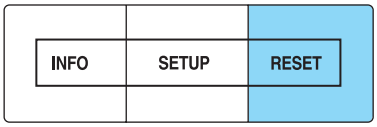


Your display can show up to 6 reconfigurable telltales at one time. What ever is displayed in the top left corner has the highest priority.

Selectable features

Reset

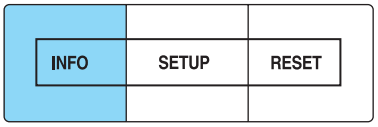
Press the RESET control to select and reset functions shown in the INFO menu, SETUP menu, text warnings and reconfigurable telltale warnings.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Info menu

The Info menu items are shown on the top two lines of the message center. Press the INFO control to display the following:



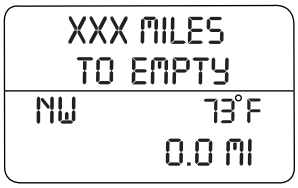
- Trip odometer (Trip A and Trip B)
- Distance to Empty
- Average Fuel Economy
- Instantaneous Fuel Economy
- Fuel Used
- Trip Elapsed Drive Time
- Blank

Trip odometer

Refer to *Gauges* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Distance to empty (DTE)

Selecting this function from the INFO menu estimates approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions. Remember to turn the ignition OFF when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

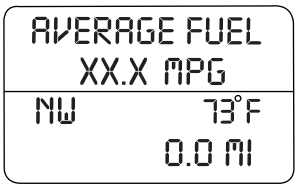


The DTE function will display LOW FUEL LEVEL and sound a tone for one second when you have approximately 50 miles (80 km) to empty. If you RESET this warning message, this display and tone will return within 10 minutes.

DTE is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is reinitialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Average fuel economy (AFE)



Select this function from the INFO menu to display your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/km.

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing miles traveled by gallons of fuel used (liters of fuel used by 100 kilometers traveled), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

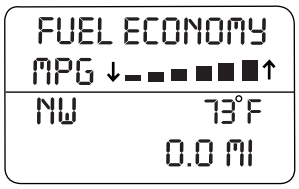
- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.

2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press the RESET control (press and hold RESET for 2 seconds in order to reset the function) after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

Instantaneous fuel economy



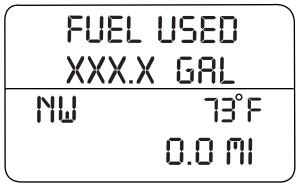
Select this function from the INFO menu to display your instantaneous fuel economy. This will display your fuel economy as a Bar Graph ranging from ▼ poor fuel economy to ▲ excellent fuel economy. As the bars increase from left to right, the instantaneous fuel economy is increasing.

Your vehicle must be moving to calculate instantaneous fuel economy. When your vehicle is not moving, this function shows one or no bars illuminated. Instantaneous fuel economy cannot be reset.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

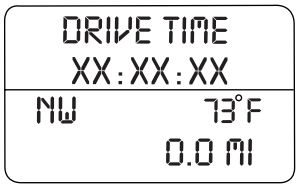
Fuel Used

Selecting this function from the INFO menu. “FUEL USED XXX.X GAL” will display the fuel used since last reset. The information displayed will be in gallons or liters, depending on English/Metric mode state.



Trip elapsed drive time

Select this function from the INFO menu to display a timer.



To operate the Trip Elapsed Drive Time perform the following:

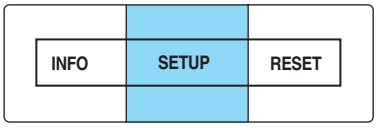
1. Press and release RESET in order to start the timer.
2. Press and release RESET to pause the timer.
3. Press and hold RESET for 2 seconds in order to reset the timer to zero.

Blank display

Select this function from the INFO menu to turn the upper two lines of the message center display OFF.

Setup menu

Press the SETUP control twice for the following displays:



- AWD Lock (4.6 L engine vehicles only)
- System Check
- Units (English/Metric)
- Language
- Autolamp
- Autolock
- Autounlock
- Power Running Boards (if equipped)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Easy Entry/Exit Seat (if equipped)
- Park Aid (if equipped)
- Compass Zone (if equipped)
- Compass Calibration (if equipped)
- Oil Life Reset and Start Value

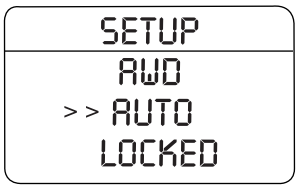
AWD lock (4.6 L engine vehicles only)

Select this function from the SETUP MENU to display the AWD locked function.

1. To disable/enable the AWD feature, select this function from the SETUP MENU.

2. Press the RESET control to select the AUTO or LOCKED mode.

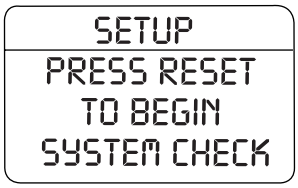
3. Press the RESET control for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO menu.



Note: When the AWD system is in the LOCKED mode, the 4X4 indicator will be illuminated.

System check

Selecting this function from the SETUP MENU causes the message center to cycle through each of the systems being monitored. For each of the monitored systems, the message center will indicate either an OK message or a warning message for two seconds.



Pressing the RESET control cycles the message center through each of the systems being monitored.

The sequence of the system check report and how it appears in the message center is as follows:

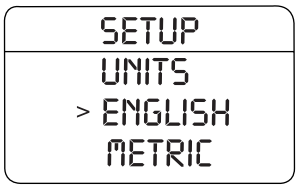
1. OIL LIFE
2. CHARGING SYSTEM
3. WASHER FLUID
4. DOOR AJAR

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. EXTERIOR LAMP
6. BRAKE FLUID LEVEL
7. PARK BRAKE
8. FUEL LEVEL AND DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Units (English/Metric)

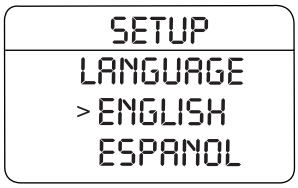
1. Select this function from the SETUP MENU for the current units to be displayed.
2. Press the RESET control to change from English to Metric.
3. Press the RESET control for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO menu.



Language

Note: When entering the SETUP MENU and a non-English language has been selected, “PRESS RESET FOR ENGLISH” will be displayed to change back to English.

1. Select this function from the SETUP MENU for the current language to be displayed.
2. Press the RESET control to cycle the message center through each of the language choices to the desired language.



Selectable languages are English, Spanish, French, Japanese, or Arabic.

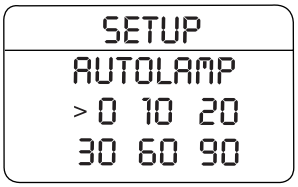
3. Press the RESET control for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO menu.

Autolamp

This feature keeps your headlights on for up to three minutes after the ignition is switched off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. To change the delay time of the autolamp feature, select this function from the SETUP MENU.



2. Press the RESET control to select the new Autolamp delay time (in seconds) value of 0, 10, 20, 30, 60, 90, 120 or 180 and wraps back to 0. Selecting 0 will result in no delay feature.

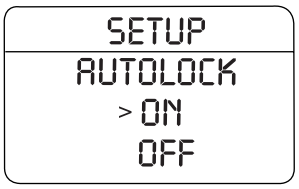
Note: ">" in front of a number indicates current selection.

3. Press the RESET control for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO menu.

Autolock

This feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when the vehicle is shifted into any gear and when the vehicle is in motion over 13 mph (20 km/h) or higher.

1. To disable/enable the autolock feature, select this function from the SETUP MENU.



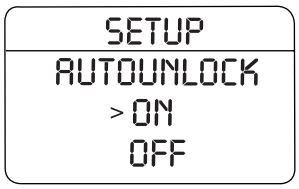
2. Press the RESET control to turn the autolock feature ON or OFF.

3. Press the RESET control for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO menu.

Autounlock

This feature automatically unlocks all vehicle doors when the driver's door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being turned off.

1. To disable/enable the autounlock feature, select this function from the SETUP MENU.



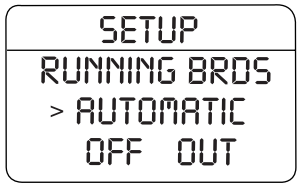
2. Press the RESET control to turn the autounlock ON or OFF.

3. Press the RESET control for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO menu.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Running Boards (if equipped)

This feature automatically deploys the side running boards for easy entry/exit from the vehicle or for cleaning. Refer to *Running boards* in this chapter for more information.



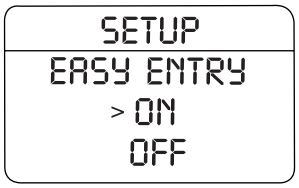
1. To change operation of the power running board feature, select this function from the SETUP MENU.

2. Press the RESET control to select the running boards setting as follows:
• AUTOMATIC: the running boards will automatically deploy when a door is opened and automatically retract when the door is closed,
• OUT: the running boards will remain OUT regardless of the doors being open/closed. For example, use this setting when washing the vehicle, or
• OFF: the running boards will remain IN regardless of the doors being open/closed.

3. Press the RESET control for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO menu.

Easy entry/exit seat (if equipped)

This feature automatically moves the drivers seat backwards for easy exit from the vehicle.



1. To disable/enable the easy exit seat feature, select this function from the SETUP MENU.

2. Press the RESET control to turn the easy entry exit seat ON or OFF.

3. Press the RESET control for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO menu.

Reverse Sensing System (Park Aid) (if equipped)

This feature sounds a warning tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper, and functions only when R (Reverse) gear is selected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. To disable/enable the reverse sensing system feature with the vehicle in P (Park), select this function from the SETUP MENU or put the vehicle in R (Reverse).

2. Press the RESET control to turn the park aid ON or OFF.

3. Press the RESET control for the next SETUP MENU item or wait for more than 4 seconds to return to the INFO menu.

Compass display (if equipped)

The compass reading may be affected when you drive near large buildings, bridges, power lines and powerful broadcast antenna. Magnetic or metallic objects placed in, on or near the vehicle may also affect compass accuracy.

Usually, when something affects the compass readings, the compass will correct itself after a few days of operating your vehicle in normal conditions. If the compass still appears to be inaccurate, a manual calibration may be necessary. Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment.*

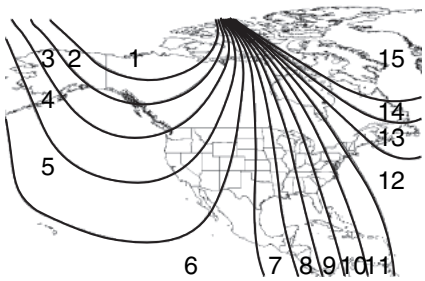
Most geographic areas (zones) have a magnetic north compass point that varies slightly from the northerly direction on maps. This variation is four degrees between adjacent zones and will become noticeable as the vehicle crosses multiple zones. A correct zone setting will eliminate this error. Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment.*

Note: Compass zone and calibration adjustments can be entered by using the INFO and SETUP MENU controls or using the reset button on top of the compass sensor mounted behind the mirror.

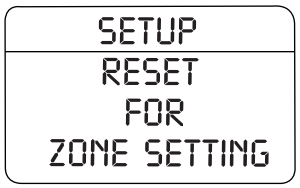
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Compass zone adjustment (if equipped)

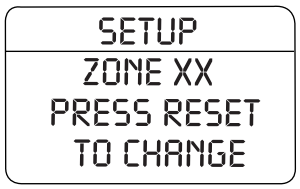
1. Determine your magnetic zone by referring to the zone map.
2. Turn ignition to the ON position.
3. Start the engine.



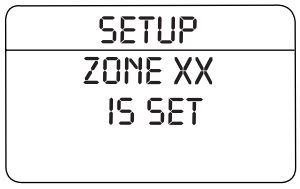
4. From SETUP menu, select compass zone.
5. Press RESET control until the message center display changes to show the current zone setting (XX).



6. Press the RESET control repeatedly until the correct zone setting for your geographic location is displayed on the message center. The range of zone values are from 01 to 15 and “wraps” back to 01.



7. Wait 4 seconds when correct zone is chosen.



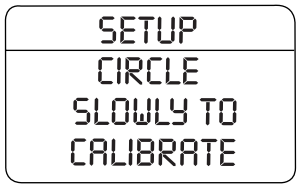
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Compass calibration adjustment

Perform compass calibration in an open area free from steel structures and high voltage lines. For optimum calibration, turn off all electrical accessories (heater/air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and make sure all vehicle doors are shut.

1. From the SETUP menu, press the SETUP control to select the compass calibration function.
2. Press RESET for calibration.

3. Slowly drive the vehicle in a circle (less than 3 mph [5 km/h]) until the CIRCLE SLOWLY TO CALIBRATE display changes to CALIBRATION COMPLETE. It will take up to five circles to complete calibration.



4. The compass is now calibrated.

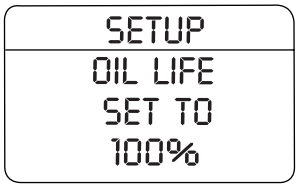
Oil life Setup and Start Value

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change [approximately 7,500 miles (12,070 km) or 6 months] perform the following:

1. Press RESET control to display "HOLD RESET IF NEW OIL".

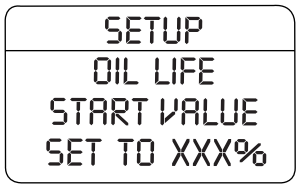
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Press and hold the RESET control for more than 2 seconds. Oil life is set to 100% and “OIL CHANGE SET TO 100%” is displayed.



Note: To change oil life 100% miles value from 7,500 miles (12,070 km) or 6 months to another value, proceed to step 3.

3. Once “OIL LIFE SET TO XXX%” is displayed, release and press the RESET control switch to change the Oil Life Start Value. Each release and press will reduce the value by 10 percent.



Note: Oil Life Start Value of 100% equals 7,500 miles (12,070 km) or 6 months. For example, setting Oil Life Start Value to 60% sets the Oil Life Start Value to 3,000 miles (4,828 km) and 120 days.

System warnings

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle’s operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for 4 seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages. This allows you to use the full functionality of the message center after you acknowledge the warning by pressing the RESET control and clearing the warning message.

Warning messages are divided into four categories:

- They cannot be cleared until the condition is corrected.
- They will reappear on the display ten minutes from the reset if the condition has not been corrected.
- They will not reappear until an ignition OFF-ON cycle has been completed.
- They reappear if the condition clears then reoccurs within the same ignition ON-OFF cycle.

This acts as a reminder that these warning conditions still exist within the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning display	Status
Door ajar	Warning cannot be reset
Fuel level low	Warning returns after 10 minutes
Park brake engaged	
Check brake system	
Check park aid (if equipped)	Warning returns only after the ignition key is turned from OFF to ON.
Brake fluid level low	
Check headlamp	
Check highbeam lamp	
Check turn lamp	
Washer fluid level low	
Oil change required	
Engine oil change soon	
Liftgate/glass ajar	Warning returns after the condition has cleared then reoccurs within the same ignition ON-OFF cycle.
Clear objects by pass seat	
Check fuel fill inlet (if equipped)	
Check charging system	
Low tire pressure	
Tire monitor fault	
Tire sensor fault	
For 4x4 low stop vehicle (if equipped)	Temporary alert
For 4x4 low shift to N (if equipped)	
To exit 4x4 low stop vehicle (if equipped)	
To exit 4x4 low shift to N (if equipped)	

DOOR AJAR. Displayed when a door is not completely closed.

CLEAR OBJECTS BY PASS SEAT. Displayed when objects are by the passenger seat. After the objects are moved away from the seat, if the warning stays on or continues to come on contact your authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHECK FUEL FILL INLET (if equipped). Displayed when the fuel fill inlet may not be properly closed. Refer to *Capless fuel filler system* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

CHECK CHARGING SYSTEM. Displayed when the electrical system is not maintaining proper voltage. If you are operating electrical accessories when the engine is idling at a low speed, turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible. If the warning stays on or comes on when the engine is operating at normal speeds, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible.

FUEL LEVEL LOW. Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.

PARK BRAKE ENGAGED. Displayed when the manual park brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km/h). If the warning stays on after the park brake is released, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM. Displayed when the braking system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

CHECK PARK AID (if equipped). Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the Reverse Sensing System (Park Aid) is disabled. Refer to *Reverse Sensing System (Park Aid)* in this section to enable.

LOW TIRE PRESSURE. Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

TIRE MONITOR FAULT. Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

TIRE SENSOR FAULT. Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Understanding your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW. Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake Fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

CHECK HEADLAMP. Displayed when the headlamps are activated and at least one bulb is burned out. Check the lamps as soon as possible and have the burned out lamp replaced. Refer to *Replacing headlamp bulbs* in the *Lights* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHECK HIGHBEAM LAMP. Displayed when the highbeam lamps are activated and at least one bulb is burned out. Check the lamps as soon as possible and have the burned out lamp replaced. Refer to *Replacing headlamp bulbs* in the *Lights* chapter.

CHECK TURN LAMP. Displayed when the turn lamps are activated and at least one bulb is burned out. Check the lamps as soon as possible and have the burned out lamp replaced. Refer to *Replacing front parking lamp/turn signal/side marker bulbs* in the *Lights* chapter.

WASHER FLUID LEVEL LOW. Indicates the washer fluid reservoir is less than one quarter full. Check the washer fluid level. Refer to *Windshield washer fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

OIL CHANGE REQUIRED. Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 0%.

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center and according to the recommended maintenance schedule. USE ONLY RECOMMENDED ENGINE OILS.

ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON. Displayed when the engine oil life reaches 5% or less of the Oil Life Start Value.

LIFTGATE/GLASS AJAR. Displayed when the liftgate or the liftgate glass is not completely closed.

FOR 4X4 LOW STOP VEHICLE (if equipped). Displayed when 4X4 LOW is selected while the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to *Using the Control trac 4WD system* in the *Driving* chapter.

FOR 4X4 LOW SHIFT TO N (if equipped). Displayed when 4X4 LOW is selected and the vehicle is stopped. For more information, refer to *Using the Control trac 4WD system* in the *Driving* chapter.

TO EXIT 4X4 LOW STOP VEHICLE (if equipped). Displayed when 2WD is selected while the vehicle is operating in 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Using the Control trac 4WD system* in the *Driving* chapter.

TO EXIT 4X4 LOW SHIFT TO N (if equipped). Displayed when 2WD is selected while the vehicle has been stopped in 4X4 LOW. For more information, refer to *Using the Control trac 4WD system* in the *Driving* chapter.

RUNNING BOARDS (IF EQUIPPED)

Deployable running boards (DRB) automatically move when the doors are opened to assist entering and exiting the vehicle.

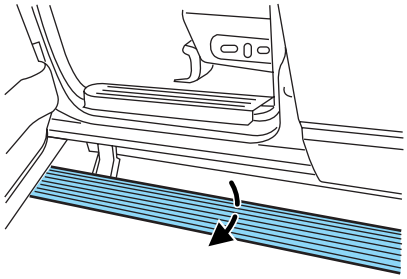
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic power deploy:

- The running boards will extend down when the doors are opened.

Automatic power stow:

- The running boards will return to the stowed position after a 2 second delay once doors are closed.



Manual power deploy:

To manually operate the running boards, refer to the *Message center* in this chapter.

- This feature can manually set the running boards in the deployed position for access to the roof or when washing your vehicle.
- When running boards are manually set in the deployed position (OUT), they will return to the stowed position and enter automatic mode when the vehicle speed becomes greater than 5 mph (8 kph).

Enable/disable:

To enable/disable the power running board feature, refer to the *Message center* in this chapter.

- When this feature is disabled (OFF), the running boards will move to the stowed position regardless of the position of the doors.
- When this feature is enabled (AUTOMATIC), the running boards will immediately move to the correct position based on the position of the doors.

Bounce-back:

- If an object is in the way of the moving running board, the running board will automatically bounce back in the reverse direction and move to the end of travel.

Note: The running boards may operate more slowly in cooler temperatures. In adverse conditions, mud, slush, salt, and other road debris may become trapped in the running board mechanism possibly causing unwanted noise. If this occurs manually set the running boards in the deployed position and flush the debris from the front and rear hinges using a high-pressure car wash wand.

Note: Do not use the running boards, front and rear hinge assemblies, running board motors, or the running board under body mounts to lift the vehicle with the jack, refer to *Changing tires* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

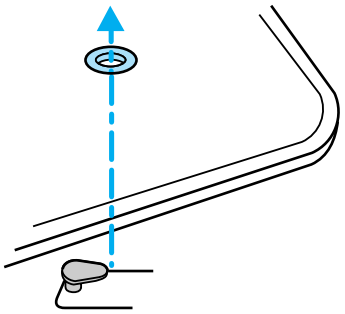
In extreme climates, excessive ice buildup may occur, causing the running boards not to deploy. Be sure that the running boards have deployed, and have finished moving before attempting to step on them. Note: The running boards will resume normal function once the blockage is cleared.

Turn off the running boards before working under the vehicle, jacking, or placing any object under the vehicle. Never place your hand in the hinge assemblies. A moving running board may cause injury

POSITIVE RETENTION FLOOR MAT

Do not install additional floor mats on top of the factory installed floor mats as they may interfere with the accelerator or the brake pedals.

Position the driver floor mat so that the eyelet is over the pointed end of the retention post and rotate forward to lock in. Make sure that the mat does not interfere with the operation of the accelerator or the brake pedal. To remove the floor mat, reverse the installation procedure.



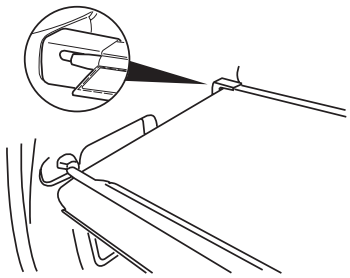
CARGO COVER (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a cargo area cover that covers the luggage compartment of your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To install the cover:

Push both ends of the cover into the depressions (right side first) in the trim panels behind the second row seat.



To reduce the risk of injuries, the cargo area cover must be properly installed on the rear trim panels.

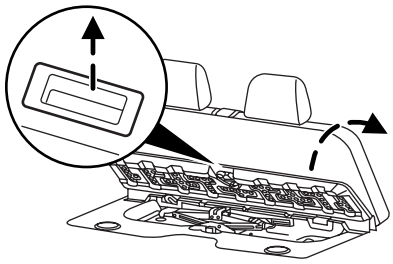
Do not place any objects on the cargo area cover. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of the vehicle in the case of a sudden stop or collision.

Cargo management system

The cargo management system consists of storage compartments located in the floor of the rear cargo area.

7 passenger stowage:

1. To open, lift up on the handle and the lid.
2. To close, lower and press the lid down.



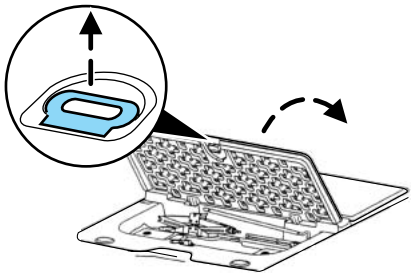
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5 passenger stowage:

When the lid is open, it will stand up on its own.

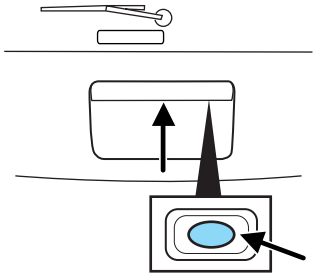
1. To open, lift the release handle and the lid.

2. To close, lower the lid, lift the release handle and press down on the lid.



REAR LIFTGATE

The liftgate area is only intended for cargo, not passengers. You can open and close the liftgate from outside the vehicle. It cannot be opened from inside the cargo area.



- To open the liftgate window, press the control on the remote entry transmitter or, with the liftgate unlocked, push the control button on the **right side** under the license plate lamp shield.
- To open the liftgate, unlock the liftgate (with the power door locks, the remote entry or the keyless entry pad) and pull the **middle** lever under the license plate lamp shield.

To lock the liftgate and the liftgate window, use the power door locks.

The liftgate door and window should be closed before driving. If not, possible damage may occur to your vehicle.

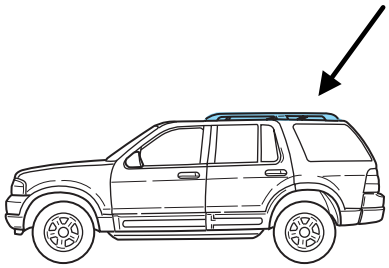
Always close liftgate window before opening liftgate. Liftgate glass and liftgate should never be open at the same time. Failure to observe this warning may result in personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Make sure the liftgate door and/or window are closed to prevent exhaust fumes from being drawn into the vehicle. This will also reduce the risk of passengers and cargo falling out.

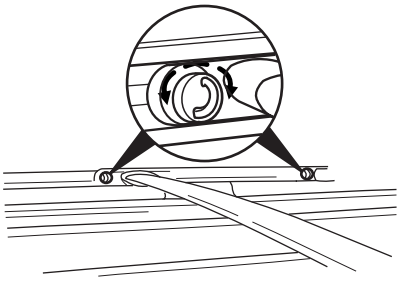
LUGGAGE RACK

″Your vehicle is equipped with a roof rack for transporting items on the exterior of the vehicle. The maximum recommended load to be carried on the roof rack is 100 lb (45 kg), evenly distributed. The crossbars (if equipped) can be adjusted by using the thumbwheels at each end. Use the tie-down loops on the thumbwheels to secure load.



To adjust cross-bar position (if equipped):

1. Loosen the thumbwheel at both ends of the cross-bar (both cross-bars are adjustable).
2. Slide the cross-bar to the desired location.
3. Firmly retighten the thumbwheel at both ends of the cross-bar.



Be sure to check that the thumbwheels are tight each time load is added or removed from the roof rack, and periodically while traveling. Always ensure that the load is secure before traveling.

Ford Motor Company recommends loading the roof rack only when equipped with (optional) crossbars, to avoid unintended damage to the roof panel.

Note: When the cross-bars are not in use, they can either be removed or adjusted so that the rear crossbar is fully rearward, and the front crossbar is 10 inches from the front end-cap to decrease wind noise.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

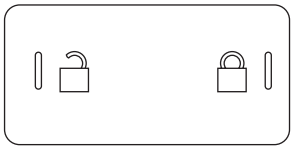
KEYS

One key operates all the locks and starts the vehicle. Always carry a spare key with you in case of an emergency.

Your keys are programmed to your vehicle; using a non-programmed key will not permit your vehicle to start. If you lose your authorized dealer supplied keys, replacement keys are available through your authorized dealer. Refer to the *SecuriLock™ passive anti-theft system* section later in this chapter for more information.

POWER DOOR LOCKS

Press control to unlock or lock all doors.



Smart unlocking feature

The smart unlocking feature helps prevent you from locking yourself out of the vehicle. With the key in any ignition position, the driver's door will automatically unlock if it is locked using the lock control on the driver's door panel while the driver's door is open.

Autolock

The autolock feature will lock all the doors, liftgate and liftgate window when:

- all doors are closed,
- the ignition is in the 3 (ON) position,
- you shift into any gear putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

The autolock feature repeats when:

- any door is opened then closed while the ignition is in the 3 (ON) position and the vehicle speed is 9 mph (15 km/h) or lower, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

Deactivating/activating autolock

Your vehicle comes with the autolock feature enabled. There are four methods to enable/disable this feature:

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

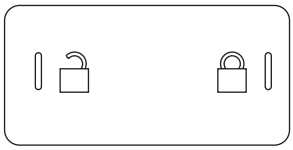
- Through your authorized dealer, or
- Performing the power door lock control procedure, or
- Performing the keyless entry key pad (if equipped) procedure, or
- Performing the message center (if equipped) procedure.

Note: The autolock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autounlock feature.

Before following the activation or deactivation procedures, make sure that the anti-theft system is not armed, ignition is in the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position and all vehicle doors, liftgate and liftgate window are closed.

Power door unlock/lock procedure

You must complete Steps 1-5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, you must wait 30 seconds. **Note: All** doors must be closed and remain closed throughout the configuration process.



1. Turn the ignition to the 3 (ON) position.
2. Press the power door unlock control three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the 3 (ON) to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position.
4. Press the power door unlock control three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the 3 (ON) position. The horn will chirp.
6. Press the unlock control, then press the lock control. The horn will chirp once if autolock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autolock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

Keyless entry key pad procedure

1. Turn the ignition to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position.
2. Close all doors, the liftgate and liftgate window.
3. Enter 5–digit entry code
4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4 press the 7 • 8.
5. Release the 7 • 8.
6. Release the 3 • 4.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The user should receive a horn chirp to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

Message center procedure

For information on activating/deactivating the autolock feature using the vehicle's message center (if equipped), refer to *Message center* information in the *Driver Controls* chapter.

Autounlock

The autounlock feature will unlock all the doors when:

- the ignition is in the 3 (ON) position, all the doors are closed, and the vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h);
- the vehicle has then come to a stop and the ignition is turned to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) or 2 (ACC) position; and
- the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being transitioned to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) or 2 (ACC) position.

Note: The doors will not autounlock if the vehicle has been electronically locked before the driver door is opened.

Deactivating/activating autounlock

Your vehicle comes with the autounlock feature activated. There are four methods to enable/disable this feature:

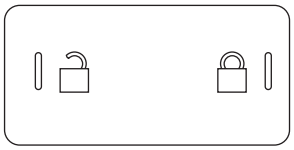
- Through your authorized dealer, or
- Performing the power door lock control procedure, or
- Performing the keyless entry key pad (if equipped) procedure, or
- Performing the message center (if equipped) procedure.

Before following the activation or deactivation procedures, make sure that the anti-theft system is not armed, ignition is in the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position, and all vehicle doors, liftgate and liftgate window are closed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power door unlock/lock procedure

You must complete Steps 1-5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, you must wait 30 seconds. **Note: All** doors must be closed and remain closed throughout the configuration process.



1. Turn the ignition to the 3 (ON) position.
2. Press the power door unlock control three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the 3 (ON) to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position.
4. Press the power door unlock control three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the 3 (ON) position. The horn will chirp.
6. Press the lock control, then press the unlock control. The horn will chirp once if autounlock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autounlock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

Keyless entry key pad procedure

1. Turn the ignition to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position.
2. Close all doors, the liftgate and liftgate window.
3. Enter 5–digit entry code
4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4 press the 7 • 8 **twice.**
5. Release the 7 • 8.
6. Release the 3 • 4.

The user should receive a horn chirp to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

Message center procedure

For information on activating/deactivating the autounlock feature using the vehicle's message center (if equipped), refer to *Message center* information in the *Driver Controls* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power door lock/unlock inhibit feature (if equipped)

If the key is not in the ignition, all doors are closed, and the vehicle has been locked using the remote entry transmitter, keypad (if equipped) or the power door unlock control on the door panel while a front door is open (then subsequently closed), the power door unlock control on the door panel will become disabled 20 seconds after the lock event occurred. Your vehicle comes with this feature enabled, but there are two methods to disable it:

- Through your authorized dealer, or
- Performing the following power door lock control procedure.

Before following the activation or deactivation procedures, make sure that the anti-theft system is not armed, ignition is in the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position, and all vehicle doors, liftgate and liftgate window are closed.

You must complete Steps 1-5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, you must wait 30 seconds. **Note: All** doors must be closed and remain closed throughout the configuration process.

1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the 3 (ON) position.

2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.

3. Turn the ignition from the 3 (ON) position to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position.

4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.

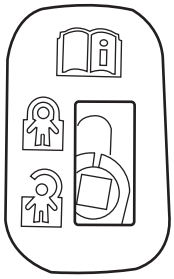
5. Turn the ignition back to the 3 (ON) position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.

6. Press the power door lock control on the door panel two times within five seconds. The horn will chirp once if trim switch inhibit was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if trim switch inhibit was activated.

7. Turn the ignition to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHILDPROOF DOOR LOCKS



- When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- The rear doors can be opened from the outside when the doors are unlocked.

The childproof locks are located on rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door. Setting the lock for one door will not automatically set the lock for both doors.

- Move lock control up to engage the childproof lock.
- Move control down to disengage childproof locks.

REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

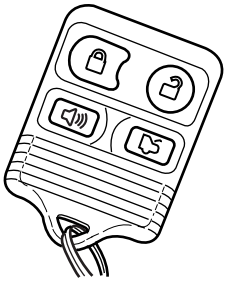
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The typical operating range for your remote entry transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions,
- nearby radio towers,
- structures around the vehicle, or
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The remote entry system allows you to lock or unlock all vehicle doors and liftgate, open the liftgate window without a key and activate the panic alarm.



The remote entry lock/unlock feature operates in any ignition position. The liftgate glass feature operates as long as the vehicle's speed is less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The panic feature operates with the key in the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position.

If there is any potential remote keyless entry problem with your vehicle, ensure **ALL** remote entry transmitters are brought to the authorized dealer to aid in troubleshooting.

Two step door unlocking

1. Press and release to unlock the driver's door. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *Illuminated entry* feature later in this section) if the control on the overhead lamp is **not** set to the **off** position and the perimeter alarm system (if equipped) will deactivate.

2. Press and release again within three seconds to unlock the passenger doors, the liftgate and liftgate glass.

The battery saver feature will turn off the interior lamps 30 minutes after the ignition is turned to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position.

One step door unlocking

If the one step door unlocking feature is activated, press and release once to unlock all of the doors, the liftgate and liftgate glass. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *illumination entry* feature later in this section). If the control on the overhead lamp is in the door position, the perimeter alarm system (if equipped) will deactivate.

Switching from two step to one step door unlocking

Your vehicle comes with two step unlocking enabled. Unlocking can be switched between two step and one step door unlocking by pressing and holding both the and buttons simultaneously on the remote entry

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

transmitter for approximately 4 seconds. The parklamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle has switched to one step unlocking. Repeat the procedure to switch back to two-step unlocking.

Locking the doors/liftgate

1. Press and release to lock all the doors and liftgate. The lamps will flash. **Note:** If any door, the liftgate or the liftgate glass are not closed properly, the lamps will not flash.
2. Press and release again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed and locked. **Note:** The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp and the lamps flash once.

Note: If any door, the liftgate or the liftgate glass are not closed properly, the horn will make two quick chirps.

Opening the liftgate window

Press to unlatch the liftgate window.

Car finder

Press twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the turn lamps will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

Sounding a panic alarm

Press to activate the alarm. The horn will sound and the parklamps will flash for a maximum of 3 minutes. Press again or turn the ignition to the 3 (ON) position to deactivate, or wait for the alarm to timeout in 3 minutes.

Note: The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is in the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position .

Memory seats/adjustable pedals/easy entry-exit feature (if equipped)

The remote entry system can also control the memory seat /adjustable pedals/easy entry-exit feature.

Press to automatically move the seat and adjustable pedals to the desired memory position (the seat position corresponds to the transmitter being used).

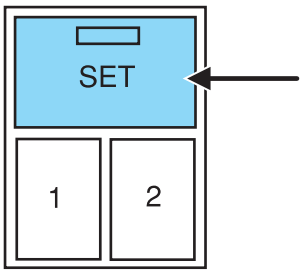
Activating the memory seat feature

To activate this feature:

1. Position the seat and adjustable pedals to the position desired.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Press the SET control on the lower-center portion of the instrument panel.



3. Within 5 five seconds, press one control on the remote transmitter and then press the 1 or 2 control on the lower-center portion of the instrument panel which you would like to associate with the seat and Driver 1 or Driver 2 positions.

4. Repeat this procedure for another remote transmitter if desired.

Deactivating the memory seat feature

To deactivate this feature:

1. Press the SET control on the driver's door panel.

2. Within 5 five seconds, press any control on the remote transmitter which you would like to deactivate and then press the SET control on the lower-center portion of the instrument panel.

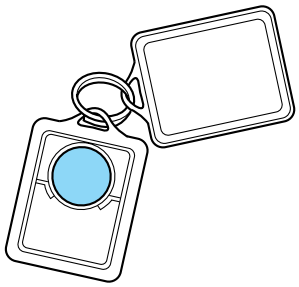
3. Repeat this procedure for another remote transmitter if desired.

Replacing the battery

The remote entry transmitter uses one coin type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

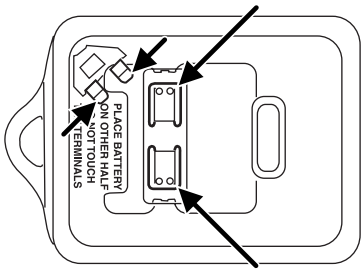
To replace the battery:

1. Twist a thin coin between the two halves of the remote entry transmitter near the key ring. DO NOT TAKE THE RUBBER COVER AND CIRCUIT BOARD OFF THE FRONT HOUSING OF THE REMOTE ENTRY TRANSMITTER.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals on the back surface of the circuit board.



3. Remove the old battery. **Note:** Please refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

4. Insert the new battery. Refer to the diagram inside the remote entry transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to ensure that the battery is fully seated in the battery housing cavity.

5. Snap the two halves back together.

Note: Replacement of the battery will **not** cause the remote transmitter to become deprogrammed from your vehicle. The remote transmitter should operate normally after battery replacement.

Replacing lost remote entry transmitters

If you would like to have your remote entry transmitter reprogrammed because you lost one, or would like to buy additional remote entry transmitters, you can either reprogram them yourself, or take **all remote entry transmitters** to your authorized dealer for reprogramming.

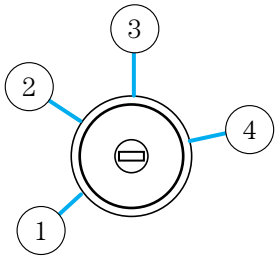
How to reprogram your remote entry transmitters

You must have **all remote entry transmitters** (maximum of six) available before beginning this procedure. If all remote entry transmitters are not present during the programming procedure, the transmitters that are not present during programming will no longer operate the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Note: Ensure the brake pedal is not depressed during this sequence.

To reprogram the remote entry transmitters:



1. Ensure the vehicle is electronically unlocked.
2. Put the key in the ignition.
3. Turn the key from the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position to 3 (ON).
4. Cycle eight times rapidly (within 10 seconds) between the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position and 3 (ON). **Note:** The eighth turn must end in the 3 (ON) position.
5. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been activated.
6. Within 20 seconds press any button on the remote entry transmitter. **Note:** If more than 20 seconds have passed you will need to start the procedure over again.
7. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that this remote entry transmitter has been programmed.
8. Repeat Step 6 to program each additional remote entry transmitter.
9. Turn the ignition to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position after you have finished programming all of the remote entry transmitters.
10. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been exited.

Illuminated entry

The interior lamps illuminate when the remote entry system is used to unlock the door(s) or sound the personal alarm.

The illuminated entry system will turn off the interior lights if:

- the ignition is turned to the 2 (ACC) or 3 (ON) position, or
- the remote transmitter lock control is pressed, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

The dome lamp control (if equipped) must **not** be set to the **off** position for the illuminated entry system to operate.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The inside lights will not turn off if:

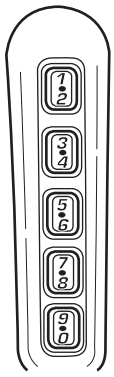
- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

The battery saver will shut off the interior lamps 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position.

KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

You can use the keyless entry keypad to:

- lock or unlock the doors without using a key.
- open the liftgate window.
- activate or deactivate the autolock feature.



The keypad can be operated with the factory set 5–digit entry code; this code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box, is marked on the computer module, and is available from your authorized dealer. You can also create your own 5–digit personal entry code. In the event the wallet card is lost, the factory set code cannot be reprogrammed.

When pressing the controls on the keypad, press the middle of the controls to ensure a good activation.

Programming a personal entry code

Up to three personal entry codes may be programmed to the vehicle. To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory set code.
2. Within five seconds press the 1 • 2 on the keypad.
3. Enter your personal 5-digit code. Each number must be entered within five seconds of each other.
4. Press 1 • 2, 3 • 4 or 5 • 6 to indicate which of the three personal entry code positions you wish to use.
5. The doors will again lock then unlock to confirm that your personal key code has been programmed to the module.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tips:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.
- If you program a code to a position that already contains a set code, the previously-set code will be erased.

Erasing personal code

1. Enter the factory set 5–digit code.
2. Within five seconds, press the 1 • 2 on the keypad and release.
3. Press and hold the 1 • 2 for two seconds. This must be done within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes are now erased and only the factory set 5–digit code will work.

Anti-scan feature

If the wrong code has been entered 7 times (35 consecutive button presses), the keypad will go into an anti-scan mode. This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash.

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- one minute of keypad inactivity.
- pressing the UNLOCK control on the remote entry transmitter.
- the ignition is turned to the 3 (ON) position.

Unlocking and locking the doors, liftgate and liftgate window using keyless entry

To unlock the driver's door, enter the factory set 5-digit code or one of the vehicle's personal codes. Each number must be pressed within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate.

To unlock all doors and liftgate, press the 3 • 4 control within five seconds.

To open the liftgate window, press the 5 • 6 control within five seconds.

To lock all doors, liftgate and liftgate window, press the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 at the same time. **Note:** The driver's door must be closed. You **do not** need to enter the keypad code first.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SECURILOCK™ PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

SecuriLock™ passive anti-theft system is an engine immobilization system. This system is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a **coded key programmed to your vehicle** is used. The use of the wrong type of coded key may lead to a "no-start" condition.

Your vehicle comes with two coded keys; additional coded keys may be purchased from your authorized dealer. The authorized dealer can program your spare keys to your vehicle or you can program the keys yourself. Refer to *Programming spare keys* for instructions on how to program the coded key.

Note: The SecuriLock™ passive anti-theft system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

Note: Large metallic objects, electronic devices that are used to purchase gasoline or similar items, or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting issues. You need to prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. These objects will not cause damage to the coded key, but may cause a momentary issue if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. If a problem occurs, turn the ignition off, remove all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine.

Anti-theft indicator

The anti-theft indicator is located on top of the instrument panel.

- When the ignition is in the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position, the indicator will flash once every 2 seconds to indicate the SecuriLock™ system is functioning as a theft deterrent.
- When the ignition is in the 3 (ON) position, the indicator will glow for 3 seconds to indicate normal system functionality.

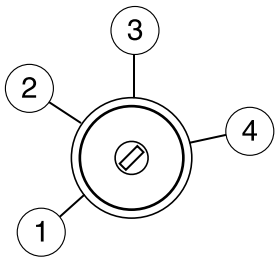
If a problem occurs with the SecuriLock™ system, the indicator will flash rapidly or glow steadily when the ignition is in the 3 (ON) position. If this occurs, the vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer for service.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic arming

The vehicle is armed immediately after switching the ignition to the 2 (ACCESSORY) position.

The theft indicator will flash every two seconds when the vehicle is armed.



Automatic disarming

Switching the ignition to the 3 (ON) position with a **coded key** disarms the vehicle.

- The theft indicator will illuminate for three seconds and then go out.
- If the theft indicator stays on for an extended period of time or flashes rapidly, have the system serviced by your authorized dealer.

Replacement keys

If your keys are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new coded keys will need to be programmed.

Replacing coded keys can be very costly. Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. Please visit an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

Programming spare keys

You can program your own coded keys to your vehicle.

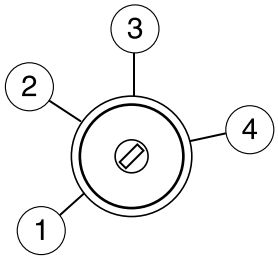
Tips:

- A maximum of eight keys can be coded to your vehicle.
- Only use SecuriLock™ keys.
- You must have two previously programmed coded keys (keys that already operate your vehicle's engine) and the new unprogrammed key(s) readily accessible.
- If two previously programmed coded keys are not available, you must take your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the spare key(s) programmed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Please read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

1. Insert the first previously programmed **coded key** into the ignition.



2. Turn the ignition from the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position to the 3 (ON) position. Keep the ignition in the 3 (ON) position for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.

3. Turn the ignition to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position and remove the first **coded key** from the ignition.

4. Within ten seconds of turning the ignition to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position, insert the second previously **coded key** into the ignition.

5. Turn the ignition from the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position to the 3 (ON) position. Keep the ignition in the 3 (ON) position for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.

6. Turn the ignition to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position and remove the second previously programmed **coded key** from the ignition.

7. Within twenty seconds of turning the ignition to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position and removing the previously programmed **coded key,** insert the new unprogrammed key (new key/valet key) into the ignition.

8. Turn the ignition from the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position to the 3 (ON) position. Keep the ignition in the 3 (ON) position for at least three seconds, but not more than 10 seconds.

9. Remove the newly programmed **coded key** from the ignition.

If the key has been successfully programmed it will start the vehicle's engine and the theft indicator light will illuminate for three seconds and then go out.

If the key was not successfully programmed, it will not start your vehicle's engine and the theft indicator light will flash on and off, and you may repeat Steps 1 through 5. If failure repeats, bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the new key(s) programmed.

To program additional new unprogrammed key(s), wait twenty seconds and then repeat this procedure from Step 1.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SEATING

Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or sudden stop.

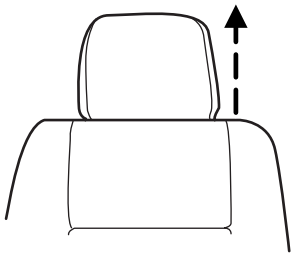
Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

Adjustable head restraints

To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

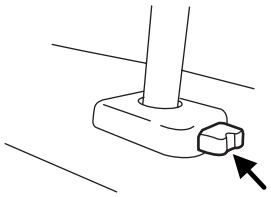
Head restraints help to limit head motion in the event of a rear collision. The seats in your vehicle have adjustable head restraints. Adjust your head restraint so that it is located directly or as close as possible behind your head.

The head restraints can be moved up and down (on first row seats only).



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Push control to lower head restraint.

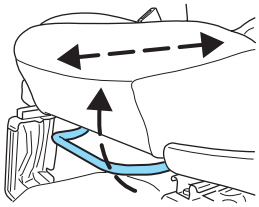


Adjusting the front manual seat (if equipped)

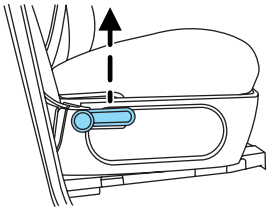
Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.

Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

Lift handle to move seat forward or backward.



Pull lever up to adjust seatback.



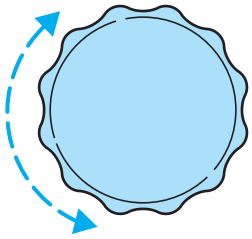
Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the manual lumbar support (if equipped)

For more lumbar support, turn the lumbar support control toward the front of vehicle.

For less lumbar support, turn the lumbar support control toward the rear of vehicle.



Adjusting the front power seat (if equipped)

Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.

Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to avoid injuring people in a collision or sudden stop.

Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

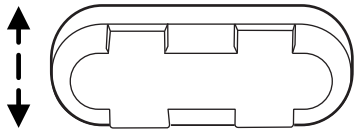
Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

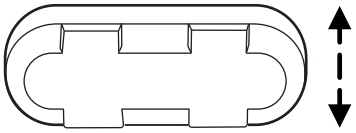
To reduce the risk of possible serious injury: Do not hang objects off seat back or stow objects in the seatback map pocket (if equipped) when a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console (if equipped). Check the “passenger airbag off” or “pass airbag off” indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* section for additional details. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system.

The control is located on the outboard side of the seat cushion.

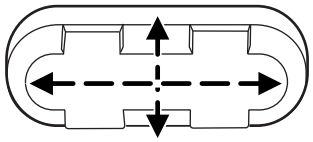
Press front to raise or lower the front portion of the seat cushion.



Press rear to raise or lower the rear portion of the seat cushion.

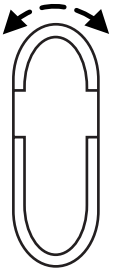


Press the control to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Press the control to recline the seatback forward or rearward.

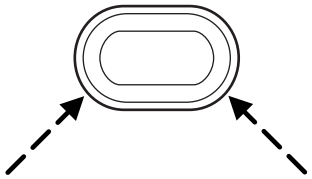


Using the power lumbar support (if equipped)

The power lumbar control is located on the outboard side of the seat.

Press one side of the control to adjust firmness.

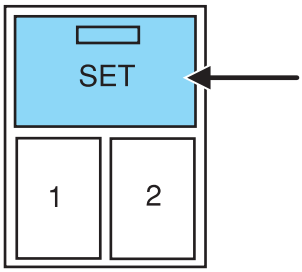
Press the other side of the control to adjust softness.



Memory seats and adjustable pedals (if equipped)

This system allows automatic positioning of the driver seat and adjustable pedals to two programmable positions.

The memory seat control is located on the lower-center portion of the instrument panel.



- To program position 1, move the driver seat and pedals (if equipped) to the desired position using the associated controls. Press the SET control. The SET control indicator light will briefly illuminate. While the light is illuminated, press control 1.
- To program position 2, repeat the previous procedure using control 2.

A position can be recalled:

- in any gearshift position if the ignition is **not** in the RUN position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- only in Park or Neutral if the ignition is in the RUN position.

A memory seat position may be programmed at any time.

The memory positions are also recalled when you press your remote entry transmitter UNLOCK control if the transmitter is programmed to a memory position or when you enter a valid personal entry code that is programmed to a memory position.

To program the memory feature to a remote entry transmitter and for more information on how to use the keypad, refer to *Remote entry system* and *Keyless entry system* in the *Locks and Security* chapter.

Heated seats (if equipped)

Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

Note: Do not do the following:

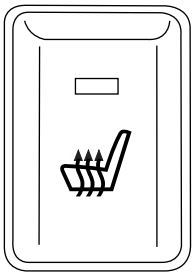
- Place heavy objects on the seat
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

The heated seat control is located in the lower center of the instrument panel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To operate the heated seats:

- Push control to activate.
- Push again to deactivate.



REAR SEATS

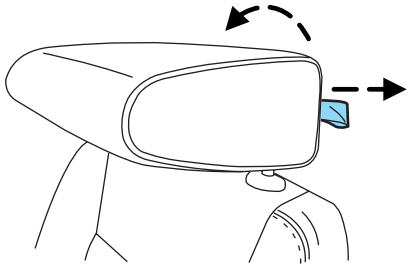
To have an unobstructed rear view, you can fold down the second and third row head restraints. Refer to the *Folding down the 2nd row 60/40 seats and bucket seats* and *3rd row folding seat (if equipped)* sections later in this chapter.

For instructions on how to remove the 2nd row head restraints to install a child seat, see *Child booster seats* later in this chapter.

Folding down the 2nd row 60/40 seats and bucket seats

Ensure that the head restraint is in the down position and no objects such as books, purses or briefcases are on the floor in front of the second row seats before folding them down.

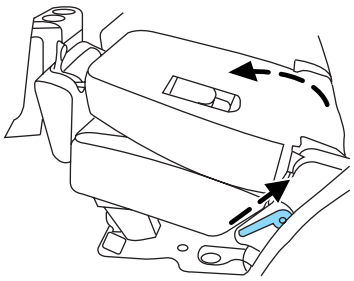
1. Lower the head restraints by pulling on the strap.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

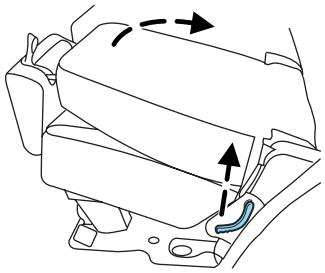
2. Locate the recline handle situated on the side of the seat cushion by the door.

3. Pull up on the handle and push the seatback forward toward the front of the vehicle.

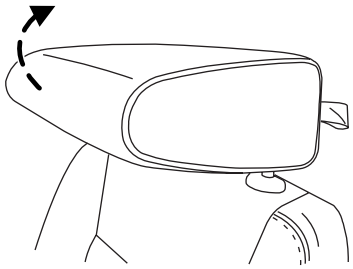


To return the seat to the upright position (seats not equipped with E-Z entry):

1. Pull up on the handle, and rotate the seatback until you hear a click, locking it in the upright position.



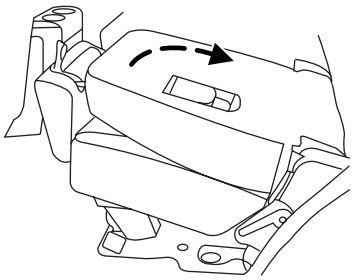
2. Lift up on the head restraint until it locks into its original position.



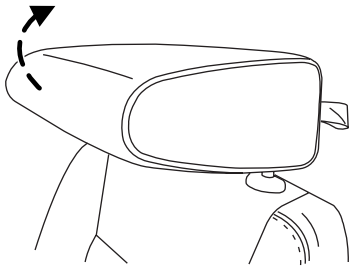
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To return the seat to the upright position (E-Z entry equipped seats):

1. Lift the seatback toward the rear of the vehicle.
2. Rotate the seatback until you hear a click, locking it in the upright position.



3. If the seat is to be occupied, lift up on the head restraint until it locks into its original position.



Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

Placing the 2nd row 60/40 seats in cargo mode (if equipped)

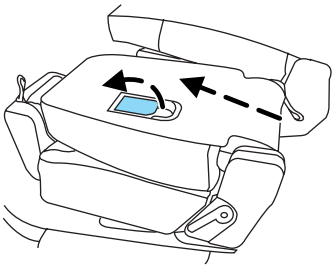
The 2nd row seats can be placed in a kneel down load floor position to allow more cargo space.

To place the seats in the cargo mode:

1. Fold down the 2nd row seat. See *Folding down the 2nd row 60/40 seats and bucket seats* above.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Lift the cargo mode lever located on the back of the seatback to kneel the seat down and get a flat loading floor.

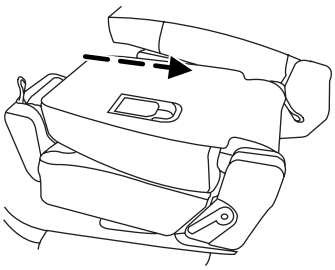


Returning to the upright position from full lowered load floor position

The seatback cannot be returned to the upright position until the seat is returned from the kneel down position. To return the seat to the upright position:

1. Push the seat rearward until the latch is engaged. Use the cushion or seatback to return to the fold-down position. Do not use the recliner handle as it could cause damage to the handle.

2. Return the seatback to the upright position.



Adjusting the 2nd row seat for E-Z Entry

The E-Z entry seat allows for easier entry and exit to and from the 3rd row seat.

To enter the 3rd row seat:

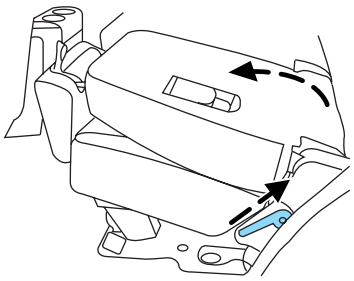
1. Fold down the 2nd row seat and release the handle. Refer to *Folding down the 2nd row 60/40 seats and bucket seats* earlier in this section.

Note: When folding down the seat, lift the handle only once. When the seatback releases and folds, the handle should be released. Any further turning of the handle while the seatback releases, may damage the handle. Once the seatback is folded, a second lifting of the handle will detach the seat rear leg locking mechanism from the floor allowing the seat to tumble forward.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Pull the handle up again until the seat releases from the floor.

3. Push the seat upward and fold it away from the third row.



Always return the seat to the fully latched position before operating the vehicle.

Returning the seat to the upright position

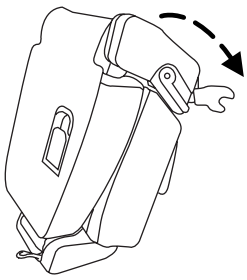
Note: To return the seat from its tumbled position to its upright position, its rear legs should first be latched to the floor by dumping the seat down into position. The interlock mechanism will not allow the release of the seatback until the seat's rear legs are fully latched to the floor. Once the rear legs are fully latched, the interlock will release the seatback, and it can then be returned to the upright position.

To return the seat to a seating position:

1. Push the seat down and latch to the floor with a moderate amount of effort and speed.

2. Make sure the seat is latched to the floor.

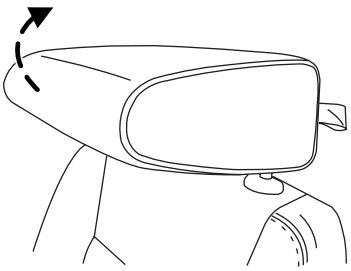
3. Bring the seat back to an upright position. The seatback should lock into position.



Note: If the seat back will not return to the upright position, tumble the seat again and re-latch it to the floor. Be sure that cargo or other objects are not trapped underneath the seatback.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Lift up on the head restraint until it locks into its original position.



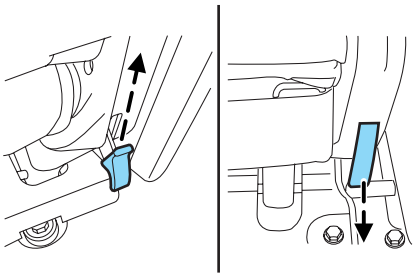
Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

Note: In vehicles equipped with 3rd row seats, the 2nd row recline/unlatch handle on the outboard sides of both 60% and 40% seats should not be used as a grab handle to raise the entire seat up from cargo mode (kneeling position), or to lower it from its tumbled position. This handle is there only to recline the seat back and to unlatch the rear seat/floor attachment, in order to tumble the seat in the forward direction. To raise the seat up from the cargo mode (kneeling position), the entire seat should be lifted up using the seat back or the seat cushion area as a grabbing surface.

Exiting the 3rd row

1. Lower the head restraints. See *Folding down the 2nd row 60/40 seats and buckets seats* earlier in this section.

2. Pull on the lever/strap (as equipped) located at the bottom right of the seat back to release the seat from the floor, and rotate the seat up towards the front seat.

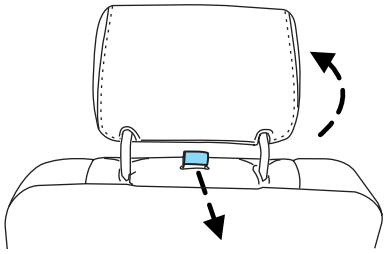


3. Follow the directions above to return the seatback from the load floor and to the upright position.

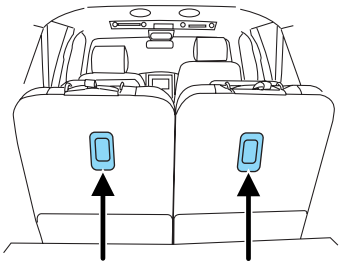
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3rd row folding seat (if equipped)

Before folding the third row seats, fold the head restraints down by pulling on the strap located under the restraint.



Pull up on the handle located behind the seatback while pushing the seatback forward and down into the seat cushion.



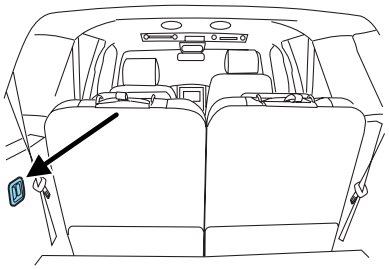
Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

3rd row power folding seat (if equipped)

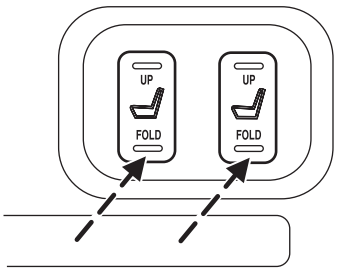
Note: Be sure that head restraints are folded down before powering the 3rd row seat down.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

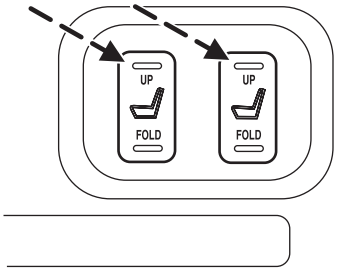
The control buttons are located on the driver-side rear quarter trim panel (accessible from the liftgate area).



Push the bottom portion of the control button to lower the desired seatback.



Push the top of the control button to return the seatback to its original position.



The power fold down seats will operate for 30 minutes after the ignition switch is in the 1 (OFF/Lock) position. The transmission must be in P (Park), and the liftgate or liftgate glass must be open. Similar to the Battery Saver feature, the power 3rd row seat will be disabled 30 minutes after turning the vehicle off. If the power 3rd row seat is disabled after 30 minutes, the seat can be enabled by opening any door, pressing the unlock control on the remote entry transmitter, pressing any keyless keypad button (if equipped), or turning the ignition key.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

SAFETY RESTRAINTS

Personal Safety System™

The Personal Safety System™ provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

Your vehicle's Personal Safety System™ consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors, and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver's seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system
- "Passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp
- Front crash severity sensor.
- Restraints Control Module (RCM).
- Restraint system warning light and back-up tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system, and indicator lights.

How does the Personal Safety System™ work?

The Personal Safety System™ can adapt the deployment strategy of your vehicle's safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the Restraints Control Module (RCM). During a crash, the RCM may activate the safety belt pretensioners and/or either one or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The fact that the pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the Personal Safety System™ determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices. Front airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollovers, side-impacts, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints

The dual-stage airbags offer the capability to tailor the level of airbag inflation energy. A lower, less forceful energy level is provided for more common, moderate-severity impacts. A higher energy level is used for the most severe impacts. Refer to *Airbag Supplemental Restraints (SRS)* section in this chapter.

Front crash severity sensor

The front crash severity sensor enhances the ability to detect the severity of an impact. Positioned up front, it provides valuable information early in the crash event on the severity of the impact. This allows your Personal Safety System™ to distinguish between different levels of crash severity and modify the deployment strategy of the dual-stage airbags and safety belt pretensioners.

Driver's seat position sensor

The driver's seat position sensor allows your Personal Safety System™ to tailor the deployment level of the driver dual-stage airbag based on seat position. The system is designed to help protect smaller drivers sitting close to the driver airbag by providing a lower airbag output level.

Front passenger sensing system

For airbags to do their job they must inflate with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk to occupants that are very close to the airbag when it begins to inflate. For some occupants, this occurs because they are initially sitting very close to the airbag. For other occupants, this occurs when the occupant is not properly restrained by safety belts or child safety seats and they move forward during pre-crash braking. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary injuries is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are much safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Air bags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active air bag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints.

The front passenger sensing system can automatically turn off the front passenger airbag and passenger seat-mounted side airbag. The system is designed to help protect small (child size) occupants from frontal airbag deployments when they are seated or restrained in the front passenger seat contrary to proper child-seating or restraint usage recommendations. Even with this technology, parents are **STRONGLY** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag and passenger seat-mounted side airbag when the passenger seat is empty.

Front safety belt usage sensors

The front safety belt usage sensors detect whether or not the driver and front outboard passenger safety belts are fastened. This information allows your Personal Safety System™ to tailor the airbag deployment and safety belt pretensioner activation depending upon safety belt usage.

Front safety belt pretensioners

The safety belt pretensioners at the front outboard seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body during frontal collisions, and in side collisions and rollovers. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal collisions, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the collision is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

Front safety belt energy management retractors

The front outboard safety belt energy management retractors allow webbing to be pulled out of the retractor in a gradual and controlled manner in response to the occupant's forward momentum. This helps reduce the risk of force-related injuries to the occupant's chest by limiting the load on the occupant. Refer to *Energy management feature* section in this chapter.

Determining if the Personal Safety System™ is operational

The Personal Safety System™ uses a warning light in the instrument cluster or a back-up tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

to the *Warning lights and chimes* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the Personal Safety System™ is not required.

The Restraints Control Module (RCM) monitors its own internal circuits and the circuits for the airbag supplemental restraints, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt buckle sensors, front passenger sensing system, and the driver seat position sensor. In addition, the RCM also monitors the restraints warning light in the instrument cluster. A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The warning light will either flash or stay lit.
- The warning light will not illuminate immediately after the ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and warning light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the Personal Safety System™ serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

Safety restraints precautions

Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit in the back seat where they can be properly restrained.

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.

All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.

Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints.

Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

Energy Management Feature

- This vehicle has a safety belt system with an energy management feature at the front seating positions to help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a head-on collision.
- This safety belt system has a retractor assembly that is designed to extend the safety belt webbing in a controlled manner. This helps reduce the belt force acting on the user's chest.

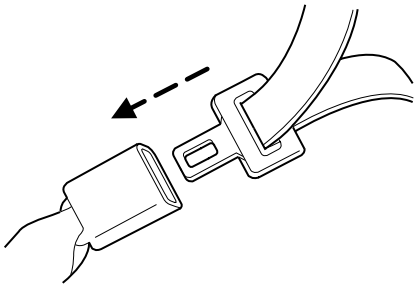
BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED if the safety belt assembly automatic locking retractor feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the Belt and Retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Combination lap and shoulder belts

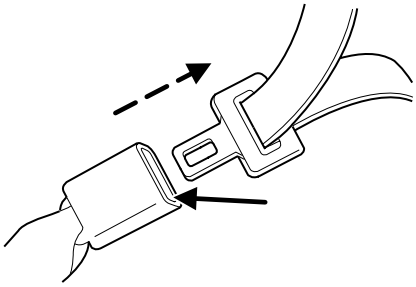
1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.

- Front and rear seats



2. To unfasten, push the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.

- Front and rear seats



All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. All of the passenger combination lap and shoulder belts have two types of locking modes described below:

Vehicle sensitive mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic locking mode

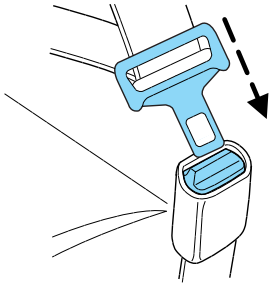
When to use the automatic locking mode

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

This mode should be used **any time** a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible. Refer to *Safety restraints for children* or *Safety seats for children* later in this chapter.

How to use the automatic locking mode

- Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.



- Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

- Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

How to disengage the automatic locking mode

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive mode.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

After any vehicle collision, the combination lap and shoulder belt system at all passenger seating positions must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the “automatic locking retractor” feature for child seats is still functioning properly, in addition to other checks for proper safety belt system function.

BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED if the safety belt assembly “automatic locking retractor” feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

Safety belt pretensioner

Your vehicle is equipped with safety belt pretensioners at the driver and right front passenger seating positions.

The safety belt pretensioner tightens the safety belts firmly against the occupant’s body at the start of the crash.

When the Safety Canopy™ system, seat-mounted side airbags, and/or the front airbags are activated, the safety belt pretensioners for the driver and right front passenger seating positions will be activated when the respective seatbelt is properly buckled.

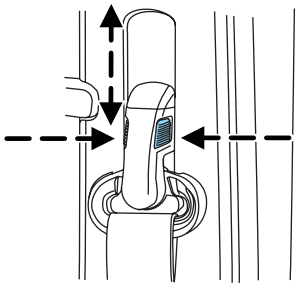
The driver and front passenger safety belt system (including retractors, buckles and height adjusters) must be replaced if the vehicle is involved in a collision that results in deployment of front airbags, seat-mounted side airbags and Safety Canopy™, and safety belt pretensioners.

Refer to the *Safety belt maintenance* section in this chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Front safety belt height adjustment

Your vehicle has safety belt height adjustments at the front outboard seating positions. Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

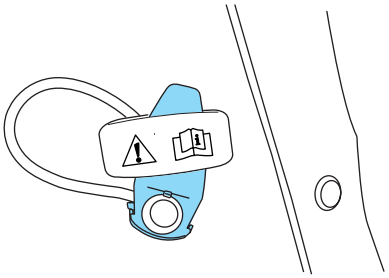


To adjust the shoulder belt height, squeeze and hold the buttons on the side and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the buttons and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Second row comfort guide

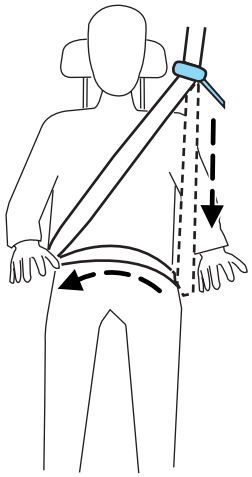
The second row outboard lap/shoulder belt is equipped with a belt comfort guide. This guide is attached to the quarter trim panel and is used to adjust the comfort of the shoulder belt for smaller occupants in the outboard second row seats.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To adjust the comfort guide:

1. Slip the shoulder belt into the belt guide.
2. Slide the guide up or down along the webbing so that the belt is centered on the occupant's shoulder.



Position the safety belt comfort guide so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Safety belt extension assembly

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, there is a 8 inch (20 cm) safety belt extension assembly that can be added (part number 611C22). This assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

Safety belt warning light and indicator chime

The safety belt warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a chime sounds to remind the occupants to fasten their safety belts.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the ON position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the ON position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

Belt-Minder®

The Belt-Minder® feature is a supplemental warning to the safety belt warning function. This feature provides additional reminders by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster when the driver's and front passenger's safety belt is unbuckled.

The Belt-Minder® feature uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder® feature for objects placed in the front passenger seat, warnings will only be given to large front seat occupants as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

Both the driver's and passenger's safety belt usages are monitored and either may activate the Belt-Minder® feature. The warnings are the same for the driver and the front passenger. If the Belt-Minder® warnings have expired (warnings for approximately 5 minutes) for one occupant (driver or front passenger), the other occupant can still activate the Belt-Minder® feature.

When the Belt-Minder® feature is activated, the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for 6 seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately 5 minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The Belt-Minder® feature uses two different warning chimes. During the first minute of activation, the warning chime will sound once every second. The remaining warning chimes will sound twice every second while the system is activated.

If...	Then...
The driver's and front passenger's safety belts are buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or less than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned ON...	The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt is not buckled when the vehicle has reached at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to ON...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for 6 seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately 5 minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt becomes unbuckled for approximately 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to ON...	The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for 6 seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately 5 minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The following are reasons most often given for not wearing safety belts (All statistics based on U.S. data):

Reasons given...	Consider...
"Crashes are rare events"	**36700 crashes occur every day.** The more we drive, the more we are exposed to "rare" events, even for good drivers. *1 in 4 of us will be seriously injured in a crash during our lifetime.*
"I'm not going far"	**3 of 4** fatal crashes occur within **25** miles (40 km) of home.
"Belts are uncomfortable"	We design our safety belts to enhance comfort. If you are uncomfortable - try different positions for the safety belt upper anchorage and seatback which should be as upright as possible; this can improve comfort.
"I was in a hurry"	**Prime time for an accident.** Belt-Minder® reminds us to take a few seconds to buckle up.
"Safety belts don't work"	**Safety belts,** when used properly, **reduce risk of death** to front seat occupants by **45% in cars,** and by **60% in light trucks.**
"Traffic is light"	**Nearly 1 of 2 deaths occur in single-vehicle crashes,** many when no other vehicles are around.
"Belts wrinkle my clothes"	Possibly, but a serious crash can do much more than wrinkle your clothes, particularly if you are unbelted.
"The people I'm with don't wear belts"	Set the example, teen deaths occur 4 times more often in vehicles with TWO or MORE people. Children and younger brothers/sisters imitate behavior they see.
"I have an airbag"	Airbags offer greater protection when used with safety belts. Frontal airbags are not designed to inflate in rear and side crashes or rollovers.
"I'd rather be thrown clear"	Not a good idea. **People** who are **ejected are 40 times more likely to DIE.** Safety belts help prevent ejection, WE CAN'T "PICK OUR CRASH".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not sit on top of a buckled safety belt or insert a latchplate into the buckle to avoid the Belt-Minder® chime. To do so may adversely affect the performance of the vehicle's air bag system.

One-time disable

If at any time the driver/front passenger quickly buckles then unbuckles the safety belt for that seating position, the Belt-Minder® is disabled for the current ignition cycle. The Belt-Minder® feature will enable during the same ignition cycle if the occupant buckles and remains buckled for approximately 30 seconds. Confirmation is not given for the one time disable.

Deactivating/activating the Belt-Minder® feature

The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® are deactivated/activated independently. When deactivating/activating one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.

Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation/activation programming procedure.

Note: The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® features must be disabled/enabled separately. Both cannot be disable/enabled during the same key cycle.

The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® features can be deactivated/activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set
- The gearshift is in P (Park) (automatic transmission)
- The ignition switch is in the OFF position
- The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled

While the design allows you to deactivate your Belt-Minder®, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the Belt-Minder® system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the Belt-Minder® feature while driving the vehicle.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the RUN (or ON) position. DO NOT START THE ENGINE.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (Approximately 1 minute).

- Step 3 must be completed within 50 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.

3. For the seating position being disabled, at a moderate speed, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt nine times, ending in the unbuckled state. Step 3 must be completed within 50 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.

- After Step 3, the safety belt warning light will be turned on for three seconds.

4. Within approximately seven seconds of the light turning off, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.

- This will disable the Belt-Minder® feature for that seating position if it is currently enabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds.
- This will enable the Belt-Minder® feature for that seating position if it is currently disabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds, followed by three seconds with the light off, then followed by the safety belt warning light flashing four times per second for three seconds again.

Safety belt maintenance

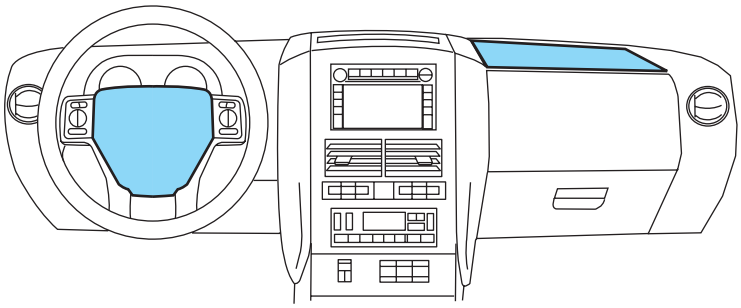
Inspect the safety belt systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the safety belt assembly under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

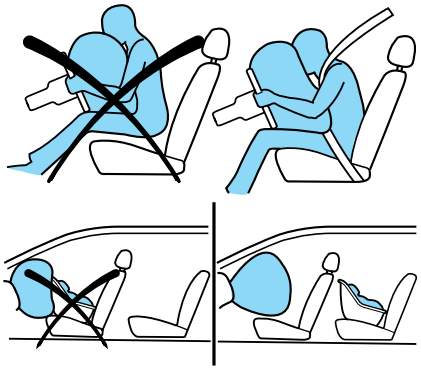
For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Interior* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)



Important SRS precautions

The SRS is designed to work with the safety belt to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.



All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

Do not put anything on or over the airbag module. Placing objects on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. See your authorized dealer.

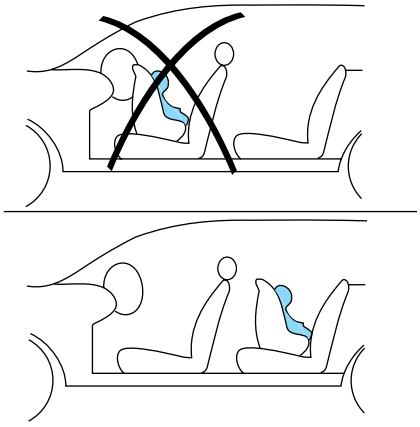
Modifications to the front end of the vehicle, including frame, bumper, front end body structure and non-Ford tow hooks may effect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle with anything other than authorized Ford accessories for your vehicle.

Additional equipment may affect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Please refer to the *Body Builders Layout Book* for instructions about the appropriate installation of additional equipment.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

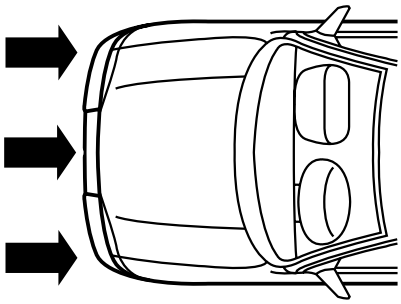
Children and airbags

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

How does the airbag supplemental restraint system work?



The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains longitudinal deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation.

The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Front airbags are designed to activate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollover, side-impact, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions, swelling or temporary hearing loss. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.

If the air bag has deployed, **the air bag will not function again and must be replaced immediately.** If the air bag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The SRS consists of:

- driver and passenger airbag modules (which include the inflators and airbags).
- seat-mounted side airbags. Refer to *Seat-mounted side airbag system* later in this chapter
- Safety Canopy™ system. Refer to *Safety Canopy™ system* later in this chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- one or more impact and safing sensors.
- a readiness light and tone.
- diagnostic module.
- and the electrical wiring which connects the components.
- Front passenger sensing system. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* later in this chapter.
- “Passenger airbag off” or “pass airbag off” indicator lamp. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* later in this chapter.

The diagnostic module monitors its own internal circuits and the supplemental airbag electrical system wiring (including the impact sensors), the system wiring, the airbag system readiness light, the airbag back up power and the airbag ignitors.

Front passenger sensing system

The front passenger sensing system is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger’s frontal airbag under certain conditions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger’s seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger’s frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or disabled (will not inflate).

The front passenger sensing system will disable (will not inflate) the front passenger’s frontal airbag if:

- the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or has small/medium objects in the front seat.
- the system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat that is installed according to the manufacturer’s instructions.
- the system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint that is installed according to the manufacturer’s instructions.
- the system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat.
- a front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The front passenger sensing system will turn off the passenger seat side airbag if:

- the seat is empty and safety belt is unbuckled.

The front passenger sensing system uses a "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator which will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled. The indicator lamp is located in the center stack of the instrument panel above the radio.

Note: The indicator lamp will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is turned to the ON position to confirm it is functional.

When the front passenger seat is not occupied (empty seat) or in the event that the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate), the indicator lamp will be unlit.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the indicator lamp will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the indicator lamp is not lit, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the indicator will be unlit and stay unlit.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- If the indicator lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant	Pass Airbag Off Indicator Lamp	Passenger Airbag
Empty seat	Unlit	Disabled
Small child in child safety seat or booster	Lit	Disabled
Small child with safety belt buckled or unbuckled	Lit	Disabled
Adult	Unlit	Enabled

Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the back seat.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash.
Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

The front passenger sensing system may detect small or medium objects placed on the seat cushion. For most objects that are in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag will be disabled. Even though the passenger airbag is disabled, the ″pass airbag off″ lamp may or may not be illuminated according to the table below.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Objects	Pass Airbag Off Indicator Lamp	Passenger Airbag
Small (i.e. 3 ring binder, small purse, bottled water)	Unlit	Disabled
Medium (i.e. heavy briefcase, fully packed luggage)	Lit	Disabled
Empty seat, or small to medium object with safety belt buckled	Lit	Disabled

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console (if equipped)
- Objects hanging off the seat back
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket (if equipped)
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat
- Check to see if the clear objects by pass seat warning is displaying in the message center. Refer to *message center* in the *Driver controls* chapter.

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.

To reduce the risk of possible serious injury:
Do not stow objects in seat back map pocket (if equipped) or hang objects off seat back if a child is in the front passenger seat.
Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console (if equipped).
Check the "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp for proper airbag Status.
Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

In case there is a problem with the front passenger sensing system, the airbag readiness lamp in the instrument cluster will stay lit.

If the airbag readiness lamp is lit, do the following:

The driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged and/or cargo is interfering with the seat; please take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least 2 minutes and verify that the airbag readiness lamp is no longer illuminated
- If the airbag readiness lamp remains illuminated, this may or may/not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

DO NOT attempt to repair or service the system; take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at the phone number shown in the *Customer Assistance* chapter of this *Owner's Guide*.

Any alteration/modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.

Determining if the system is operational

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to *Airbag readiness* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

Seat-mounted side airbag system

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover on the side of the seatbacks of the front seats or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag SRS, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag. See your authorized dealer.

All occupants of the vehicle should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS is provided.

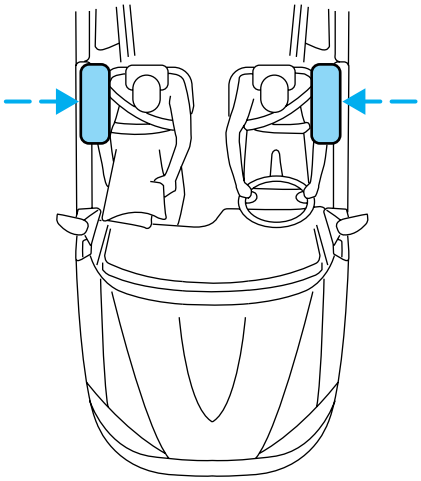
How does the side airbag system work?

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

The side airbag system consists of the following:



- An inflatable nylon bag (airbag) with an inflator concealed behind the outboard bolster of the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- A special seat cover designed to allow airbag deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Crash sensors located on the front doors and C pillars (one sensor on each pillar on each side of the vehicle).

Side airbags, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision.

The side airbags are fitted on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain lateral collisions, the airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated. If the front passenger sensing system detects an empty seat, the front passenger seat-mounted side airbag will be deactivated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.

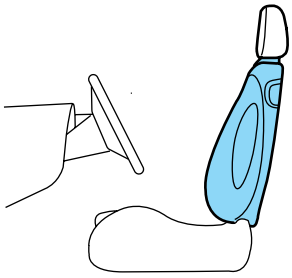
The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation.

The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Side airbags are designed to inflate in side-impact collisions, not roll-over, rear-impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

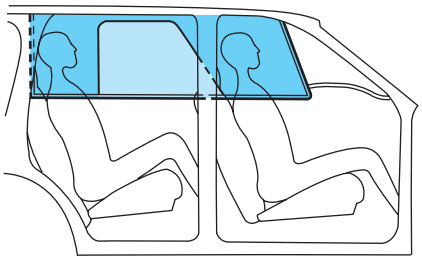
Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.

If the side airbag has deployed, **the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer .** If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.



Safety Canopy™ system

Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying Safety Canopy™. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.



Do not lean your head on the door. The Safety Canopy™ could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

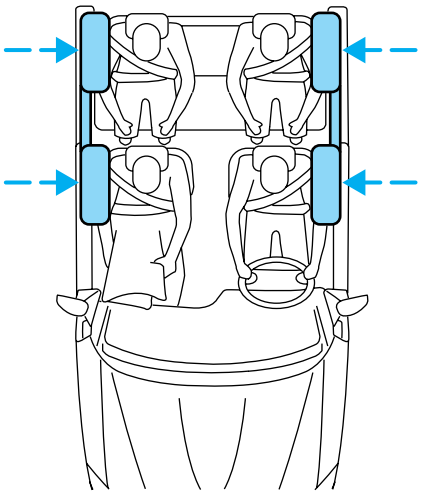
Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the Safety Canopy™ system, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing a Safety Canopy™. See your authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

All occupants of the vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS and Safety Canopy™ system is provided.

To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the inflatable Safety Canopy™.

How does the Safety Canopy™ system work?



The design and development of the Safety Canopy™ system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy™).

The Safety Canopy™ system consists of the following:

- An inflatable nylon curtain with an inflator concealed behind the headliner and above the doors (one on each side of the vehicle).
- A headliner that will flex to open above the side doors to allow Safety Canopy™ deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Two side crash sensors mounted at the front doors (one on each side of the vehicle).
- Two side crash sensors located at the c-pillar behind the rear doors (one on each side of the vehicle).
- Roll over sensor in the restraints control module (RCM).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The Safety Canopy™ system, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision or rollover event.

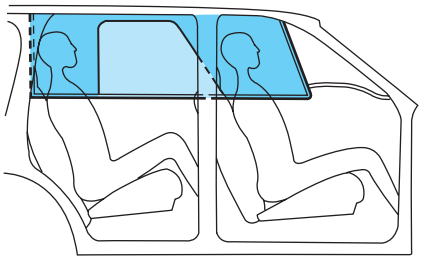
Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the second or third row seats (if equipped). The Safety Canopy™ will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window openings.

The Safety Canopy™ system is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the side crash sensor to close an electrical circuit that initiates Safety Canopy™ inflation or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor.

The Safety Canopy™ is mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above the first and second row seats. In certain lateral collisions or rollover events, the Safety Canopy™ system will be activated, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy™ is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact collisions and rollover events.

The fact that the Safety Canopy™ system did not activate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. The Safety Canopy™ is designed to inflate in certain side impact collisions or rollover events, not in rear impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration or rollover likelihood.

Several Safety Canopy™ system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the Safety Canopy™ system has deployed, **the Safety Canopy™ will not function again. The Safety Canopy™ system (including the A, B and C pillar trim) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the Safety Canopy™ is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Determining if the system is operational

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Airbag readiness* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

Any difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light (same light as for front airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision or rollover event.

Disposal of airbags and airbag equipped vehicles (including pretensioners)

See your authorized dealer. Airbags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.

SAFETY RESTRAINTS FOR CHILDREN

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children. Also see *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in this chapter for special instructions about using airbags.

Important child restraint precautions

You are required by law to use safety restraints for children in the U.S. and Canada. If small children (generally children who are four years old

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

or younger and who weigh 40 lb [18 kg] or less) ride in your vehicle, you must put them in safety seats made especially for children. Many states require that children use approved booster seats until they are eight years old. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle. When possible, always place children under age 12 in the rear seat of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position.

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.

Always follow the instructions and warnings that come with any infant or child restraint you might use.

Children and safety belts

If the child is the proper size, restrain the child in a safety seat. Children who are too large for child safety seats (as specified by your child safety seat manufacturer) should always wear safety belts.

Follow all the important safety restraint and airbag precautions that apply to adult passengers in your vehicle.

If the shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt can be positioned so it does not cross or rest in front of the child's face or neck, the child should wear the lap and shoulder belt. Moving the child closer to the center of the vehicle may help provide a good shoulder belt fit.

Belt comfort guides are provided at the 2nd row outboard seats to improve belt comfort for smaller occupants. The belt comfort guide is not a substitute for a booster seat, and is only intended to improve the comfort of the safety belt if it rests against the neck. Most children still need a booster seat to encourage upright posture and improve lap belt fit. Refer to *Second row comfort guide* earlier in this chapter.

Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Child booster seats

Children outgrow a typical convertible or toddler seat when they weigh 40 lb (18 kg) and are around 4 years of age. Although the lap/shoulder

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

belt will provide some protection, these children are still too small for lap/shoulder belts to fit properly, which could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash.

To improve the fit of both the lap and shoulder belt on children who have outgrown child safety seats, Ford Motor Company recommends use of a belt-positioning booster.

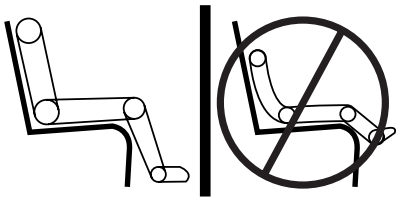
Booster seats position a child so that safety belts fit better. They lift the child up so that the lap belt rests low across the hips and the knees bend comfortably. Booster seats may also make the shoulder belt fit better and more comfortably. Try to keep the belt near the middle of the shoulder.

When children should use booster seats

Children need to use booster seats from the time they outgrow the toddler seat until they are big enough for the vehicle seat and lap/shoulder belt to fit properly. Generally this is when they weigh about 80 lb (36 kg) (about 8 to 12 years old).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions:

- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat without slouching?



- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Types of booster seats

There are two types of belt-positioning booster seats:

- Those that are backless.

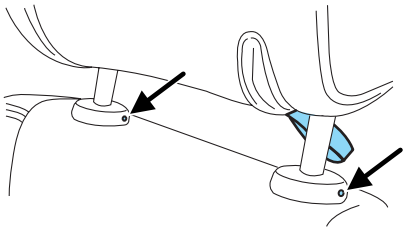
  If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield and use the lap/shoulder belt. If a seating position has a low seat back and no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (top of ear level) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back and lap/shoulder belts.

- Those with a high back.

  If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Either type can be used at any seating position equipped with lap/shoulder belts if your child is over 40 lb (18 kg).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

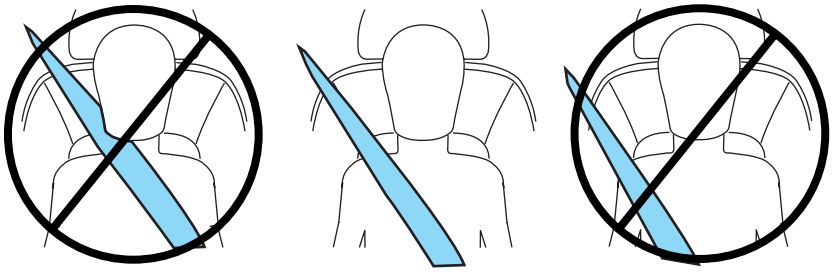


If needed, when installing some high back child restraints, the head restraints of the second row seating positions can be removed. Insert a thin pointed object, such as a paper clip or pushpin, into the hole of each head restraint guide and while lifting up remove the head restraint. Store the head restraint in a secure location in the vehicle. To re-install the head restraint, line the posts up in the holes on the seat back with the head restraint strap facing the outside of the vehicle and push down until the head restraint locks into place. Lift gently to ensure it is locked into place.

If the head restraint has been removed from a seating position to accommodate a high back child restraint, the head restraint must be re-installed prior to use of the seat by any other occupant in order to reduce the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Children and booster seats vary widely in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The drawings below compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder.



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition.

The importance of shoulder belts

Using a booster without a shoulder belt increases the risk of a child's head hitting a hard surface in a collision. For this reason, you should never use a booster seat with a lap belt only. It is best to use a booster seat with lap/shoulder belts in the back seat- the safest place for children to ride.

Move a child to a different seating location if the shoulder belt does not stay positioned on the shoulder during use.

Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.

Never put the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it eliminates the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

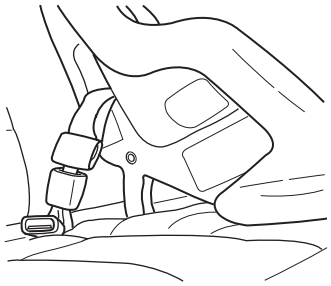
Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

SAFETY SEATS FOR CHILDREN

Child and infant or child safety seats

Use a safety seat that is recommended for the size and weight of the child. Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.

When installing a child safety seat:



- Review and follow the information presented in the *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* section in this chapter.
- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from).
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place seat back in upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. Refer to *Automatic locking mode* (passenger side front and outboard rear seating positions) (if equipped) section in this chapter.
- LATCH lower anchors are recommended for use by children up to 48 lb (22 kg) in a child restraint. Top tether anchors can be used for children up to 60 lb (27 kg) in a child restraint, and to provide upper torso restraint for children up to 80 lb (36 kg) using an upper torso harness and a belt-positioning booster.

Ford recommends the use of a child safety seat having a top tether strap. Install the child safety seat in a seating position with LATCH and

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

tether anchors. For more information on top tether straps and anchors, refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* in this chapter. For more information of LATCH anchors refer to *Attaching child safety seats with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) attachments for child seat anchors* in this chapter.

Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions included with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.

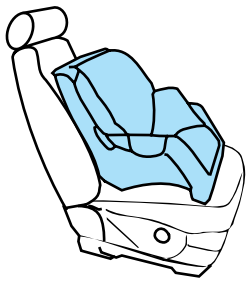
Rear-facing child seats or infant carriers should never be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

Installing child safety seats with combination lap and shoulder belts

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.

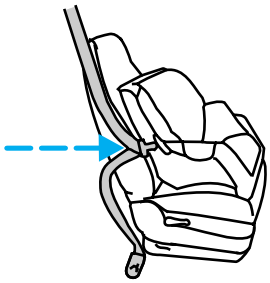
1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



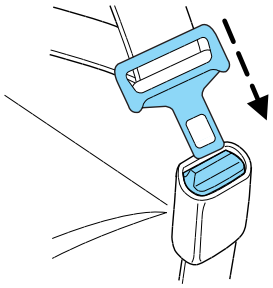
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.

3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.

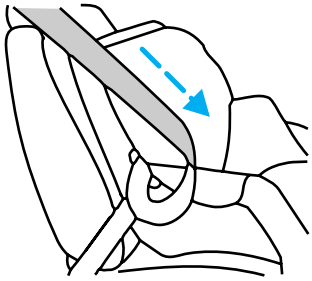


4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



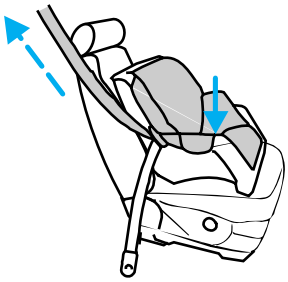
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out and a click is heard.



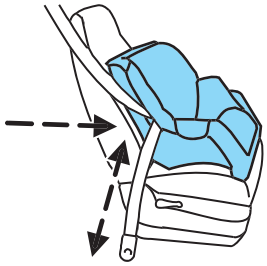
6. Allow the belt to retract. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

7. Pull the lap belt portion across the child seat toward the buckle and pull up on the shoulder belt while pushing down with your knee on the child seat.



8. Allow the safety belt to retract to remove any slack in the belt.

9. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward. There should be no more than one inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.



10. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 2 through 9.

Check to make sure the child seat is properly secured before each use.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Attaching child safety seats with tether straps

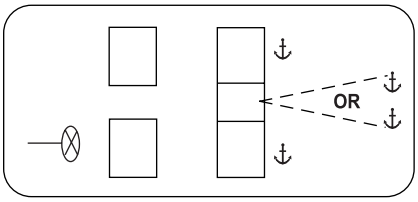
Most new forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which goes over the back of the seat and hooks to an anchoring point. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap.

The rear seats of your vehicle are equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as shown below.

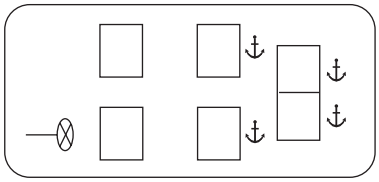
The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

- 5 passenger vehicle

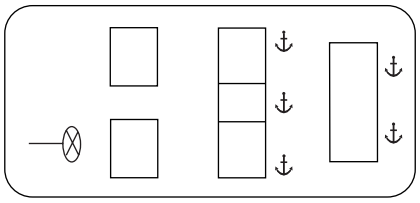
  For the center seat, use either of the two tether anchors/cargo tie-downs in the scuff plate along the back edge of the floor.



- 6 passenger vehicle



- 7 passenger vehicle



Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

Do not tie down cargo with anchors if the anchors are in use as child tethers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

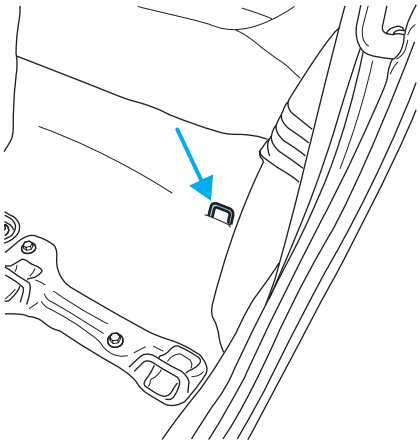
1. Position the child safety seat on the rear seat cushion.

2. Route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts.

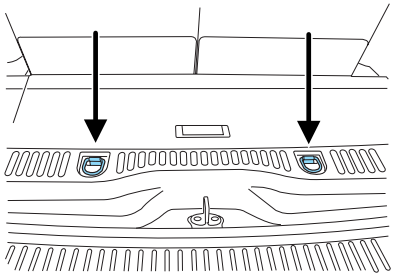
3. Locate the correct anchor for the selected rear seating position.

When placing a child safety seat in the 2nd row center seating position of the 5 passenger vehicle, the tether straps may be attached to either of the tether anchors located at the rear of the cargo area.

- Behind 2nd row seat

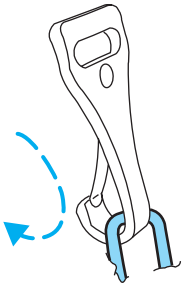


- At the rear of the cargo area



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor.



If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

5. Install the child safety seat tightly using the LATCH anchors or safety belts. Follow the instructions in this chapter.

6. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

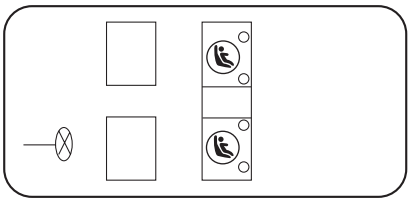
If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

Attaching child safety seats with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) attachments for child seat anchors

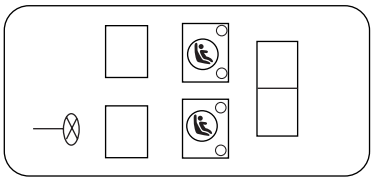
Some child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to two anchors at certain seating positions in your vehicle. This type of child seat eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the tether strap must also be attached to the proper tether anchor. See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* in this chapter.

Your vehicle has LATCH anchors for child seat installation at the following seating positions. In addition, six passenger and seven passenger LATCH anchor positions are marked with the child seat symbol.

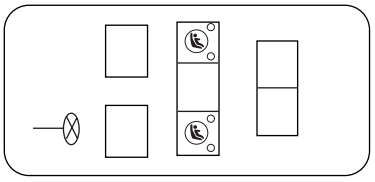
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



- 5 passenger vehicle



- 6 passenger vehicle

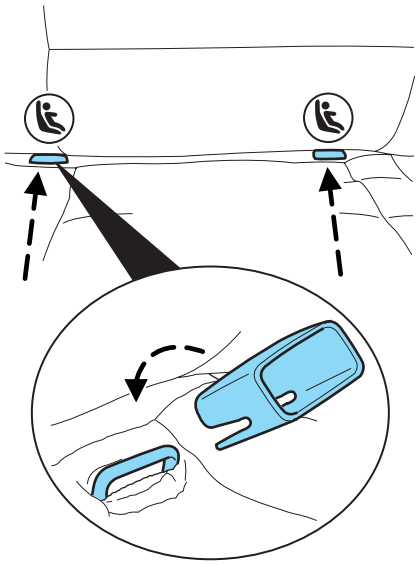


- 7 passenger vehicle

Never attach two LATCH child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The lower anchors for child seat installation are located at the rear section of the second row seat between the cushion and seat back. The LATCH anchors are below the locator symbols on the seat back on 6 and 7 passenger vehicles. The 5 passenger vehicle does not require the symbol, however, the anchor itself is located in the same area.



The anchors on the 2nd row outboard seats are provided only to install child seats at the outboard seats. DO NOT install a child seat at the center 2nd row seat using LATCH attachments (rigid or mounted on belt webbing) mounted to the inboard lower anchors at the outboard seats. If you install a child seat at the center 2nd row position, use the vehicle belt and the top tether anchor.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments. Plastic LATCH guides can be obtained from an authorized dealer. They snap onto the LATCH lower anchors in the seat to help attach a child seat with rigid attachments. The guides hold the seat trim away to expose the anchor and make it easier to attach some child seats.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

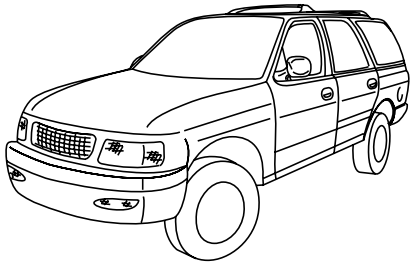
Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor. Try to move the child seat from side to side. Also try to tug the seat forward. Check to see if the anchors hold the seat in place.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE TO UTILITY VEHICLE AND TRUCK OWNERS

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.



Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must:

- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers;
- Drive at safe speeds for the conditions;
- Keep tires properly inflated;
- Never overload or improperly load your vehicle; and
- Make sure every passenger is properly restrained.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear seat belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

Study your *Owner's Guide* and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

VEHICLE CHARACTERISTICS

4WD and AWD Systems (if equipped)

A vehicle equipped with AWD or 4WD (when selected) has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

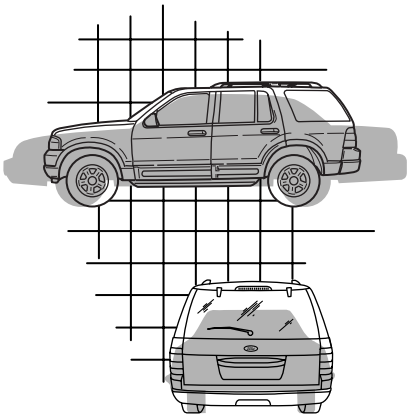
Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case or power transfer unit. 4WD vehicles allow you to select different drive modes as necessary. Information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures can be found in the *Driving* chapter. Information on transfer case maintenance can be found in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

On some 4WD models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to 4WD while the vehicle is moving can cause a momentary clunk and ratcheting sound. These sounds are normal as the front drivetrain comes up to speed and is not cause for concern.

Do not become overconfident in the ability of 4WD and AWD vehicles. Although a 4WD or AWD vehicle may accelerate better than two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

SUV and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:



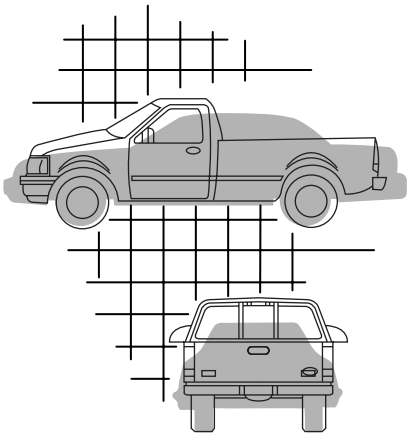
- Higher – to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter – to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Narrower — to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.

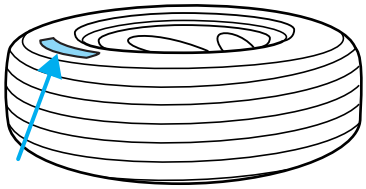
As a result of the above dimensional differences, SUV's and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition.

These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.



INFORMATION ABOUT UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:



- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or "LT" type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA A B C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature A B C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

TIRES

Tires are designed to give many thousands of miles of service, but they must be maintained in order to get the maximum benefit from them.

Glossary of tire terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

Use a tire gauge to check the tire inflation pressure, including the spare (if equipped), at least monthly and before long trips. You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or ″blowout″, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10° F (6° C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never “bleed” or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

Note: If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure

Note: If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

Note: Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type/mini-spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For Full Size and Dissimilar spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

TIRE CARE

Inspecting your tires

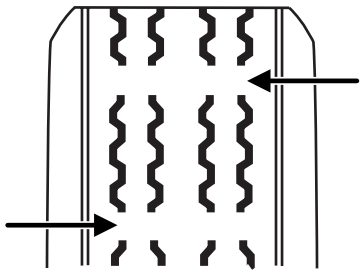
Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check for holes or cuts that may permit air leakage from the tire and make necessary repairs. Also inspect the tire sidewalls for

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

Tire wear



When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm). When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Age

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.
You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire replacement requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver’s door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should consult your Ford dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, see an authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.
When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft. (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.
4. Use both eye and ear protection.

For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford Dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.
Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft. (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

Safety practices

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., **do not** rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Highway hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and wheel alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front wheel drive (FWD) vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

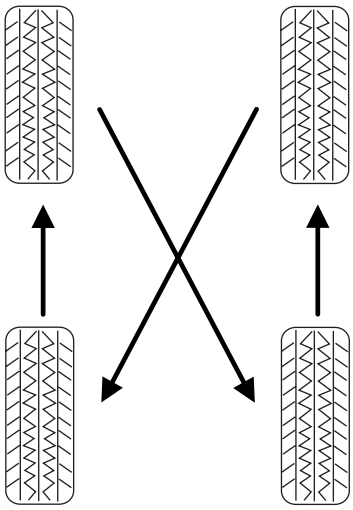
The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Tire rotation

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *scheduled maintenance information* that comes with your vehicle) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Rear Wheel Drive (RWD) vehicles/Four Wheel Drive (4WD)/All Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

Note: If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

Note: Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

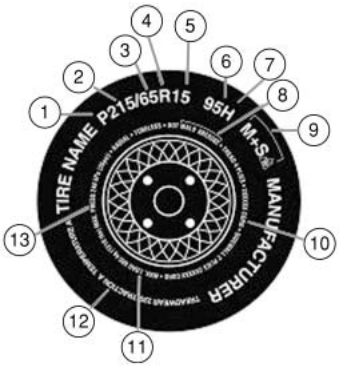
INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information on “P” type tires

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)



1. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

Note: If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

2. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width.

4. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

6. **95:** Indicates the tire’s load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your *Owner’s Guide*. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

7. **H:** Indicates the tire’s speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)
Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.	

8. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

9. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or
AT: All Terrain, or
AS: All Season.

10. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

11. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

12. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades**

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

13. **Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Additional information contained on the tire sidewall for “LT” type tires

“LT” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below.

Note: Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

1. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

2. **Load Range/Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire’s load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

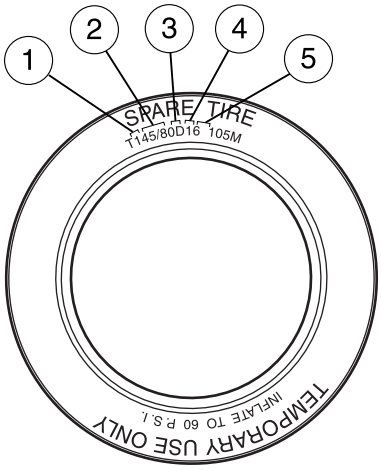
3. **Maximum Load Dual lb. (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

4. **Maximum Load Single lb. (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information on “T” type tires

“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:



T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

1. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

2. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

4. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.
R: Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Location of the tire label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Vehicle loading — with and without a trailer* section.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

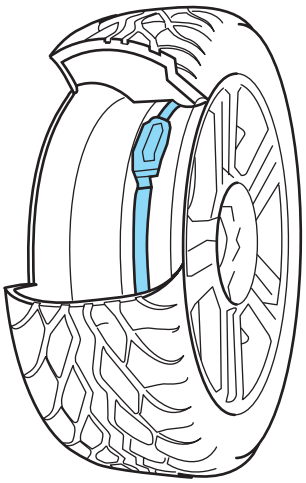
The Tire Pressure Monitoring System complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Changing tires with TPMS



Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor fastened to the inside rim of the wheel. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. The pressure sensor is located opposite (180 degrees) from the valve stem. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Understanding your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp will turn ON if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns ON and a short time later turns OFF, your tire pressure still needs to be checked. Visit www.checkmytires.org for additional information.

When your temporary spare tire is installed

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the TPMS system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel/tire needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full functionality of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System, have the damaged road wheel/tire repaired and remounted on your vehicle. For additional information, refer to *Changing tires with TPMS* in this section.

When you believe your system is not operating properly

The main function of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your Tire Pressure Monitoring System:

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Low Tire Pressure Warning Light	Possible cause	Customer Action Required
Solid Warning Light	Tire(s) under-inflated	1. Check your tire pressure to ensure tires are properly inflated; refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. 2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light will turn OFF.
	Spare tire in use	Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to *When your temporary spare tire is installed* in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the light remains ON, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Low Tire Pressure Warning Light	Possible cause	Customer Action Required
Flashing Warning Light	Spare tire in use	Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel and re-mount it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description of how the system functions under these conditions, refer to *When your temporary spare tire is installed* in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the TPMS warning light still flashes, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

When inflating your tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the Tire Pressure Monitoring System may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn OFF after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

How temperature affects your tire pressure

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary over night with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (20.7 kPa) for a drop of 30° F (16.6°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is ON, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. (If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.) Check air pressure in the road tires. If

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

SNOW TIRES AND CHAINS

Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. The use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. Using any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford may increase the risk of loss of vehicle control or vehicle rollover, which could result in personal injury or death.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, using snow tires or traction devices may be necessary. Ford offers tire cables as a Ford approved accessory and recommends use of these or SAE class “S” tire cables. See your authorized dealer for more information on tire cables for your vehicle.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and traction devices:

- Use only SAE Class S chains.
- Cables should only be used on the rear wheels.
- Do not use tire chains, cables or optional traction devices on 20 inch wheels and tires.
- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent vehicle damage.
- Avoid overloading your vehicle.
- Remove the cables when they are no longer needed.
- Do not use cables on dry roads.
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) with tire cables on your vehicle.

Consult your authorized dealer for information on other Ford Motor Company approved methods of traction control.

VEHICLE LOADING – WITH AND WITHOUT A TRAILER

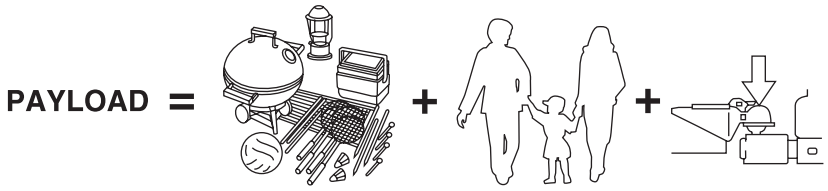
This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

Base Curb Weight – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Curb Weight – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

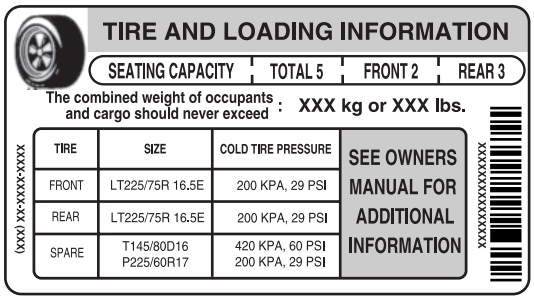


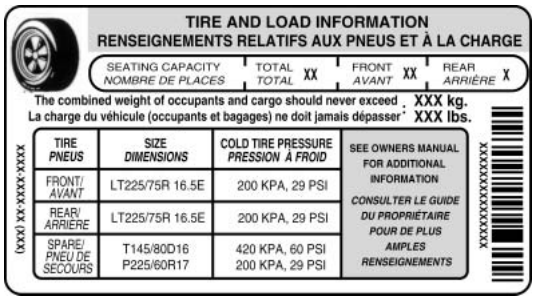
Payload – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **"THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb."** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Example only:





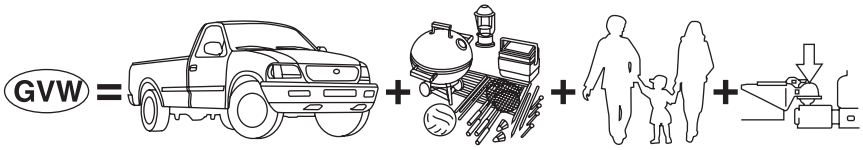
Cargo Weight – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight) – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

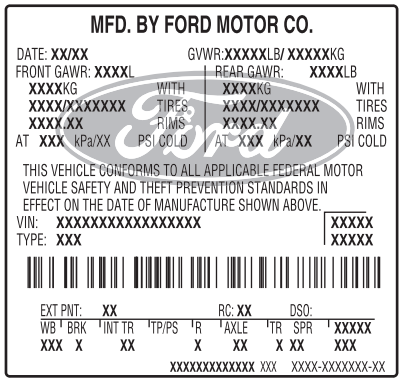
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**

Note: For trailer towing information refer to *Trailer towing* found in this chapter or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer.



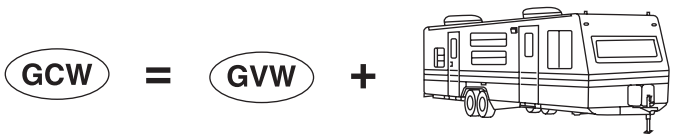
GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**



Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



GCW (Gross Combined Weight) – is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer – including all cargo and passengers – that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the GCW of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the GVWR of the towing vehicle. **The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight – is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer), and driver only (150 lb. [68 kg]). **Consult your authorized dealer (or the** *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* **provided by your authorized dealer) for more detailed information.**

Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight – refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

Examples: For a 5,000 lb. (2,268 kg) conventional trailer, multiply 5,000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 lb. (227 to 340 kg). For an 11,500 lb. (5,216 kg) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1,725 to 2,875 lb. (782 to 1,304 kg)

Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.

Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.). In metric units (635-340 (5 x 68) = 295 kg.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be: 1400 - (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 lb. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg - (5 x 99 kg) - (5 x 13.5 kg) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kg.
- A final example for your vehicle with 1,400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (12 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = - 240 lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg - (2 x 99 kg) - (12 x 45 kg) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

1400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg - (2 x 99 kg) - (9 x 45 kg) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kg.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label found on the edge of the driver's door.

Special loading instructions for owners of pickup trucks and utility-type vehicles

For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see the *Preparing to drive your vehicle* section in the *Driving* chapter of this *Owner's Guide*.

Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.

Calculating the load your vehicle can carry/tow

1. Use the appropriate maximum GCWR chart (in the *Trailer towing* section in this chapter) for your type of engine and rear axle ratio.

2. Weigh your vehicle without cargo. To obtain correct weights, take your vehicle to a shipping company or an inspection station for trucks.

3. Subtract your loaded weight from the maximum GCWR in the chart. This is the maximum trailer weight your vehicle can tow. It must be below the maximum trailer weight shown in the chart.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

TRAILER TOWING

Trailer towing with your vehicle may require the use of a trailer tow option package.

Trailer towing puts additional loads on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires, and suspension. For your safety and to maximize vehicle performance, be sure to use the proper equipment while towing.

Follow these guidelines to ensure safe towing procedure:

- Do not tow a trailer until your vehicle has been driven at least 1,000 miles (1600 km).
- Stay within your vehicle's load limits.
- Thoroughly prepare your vehicle for towing. Refer to *Preparing to tow* in this chapter.
- Use extra caution when driving while trailer towing. Refer to *Driving while you tow* in this chapter.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. Refer to the severe duty schedule in the *scheduled maintenance information*.
- Refer to the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.

Do not exceed the maximum loads listed on the Safety Compliance Certification label. For load specification terms found on the label, refer to *Vehicle loading* in this chapter when figuring the total weight of your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with a standard Class II integrated hitch and requires only a draw bar and ball with a 19 mm (3/4 inch) shank diameter. An optional Class III/Class IV hitch is also available.

Note: Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of the vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4x2			
GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)/Trailer Weight			
Engine	**Rear axle ratio**	**Maximum GCWR-lb. (kg)**	**Trailer weight range-lb. (kg) (0-Maximum)**
4.0L SOHC Class II towing	3.55	8500 (3856)	0–3500 (0–1588)
4.6L* Class II towing	3.55	8500 (3856)	0–3500 (0–1588)
4.0L SOHC Class III/IV towing	3.73	10000 (4536)	0–5395 (0–2447)
4.6L* Class III/IV towing	3.55	12000 (5443)	0–7310 (0–3316)
Notes: - For high altitude operation, reduce GCW by 2% per 1,000 ft. (300 meters) elevation. For definitions of terms used in this table and instructions on how to calculate your vehicle load, refer to *Vehicle loading* in this chapter. Maximum trailer weights shown. The combined weight of the completed towing vehicle and the loaded trailer must not exceed the GCWR.			
* -When towing maximum loads under high outside temperatures and on steep grades, the A/C system may cycle on and off to protect the engine from overheating. This may result in a temporary increase of interior temperatures.			

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4X4			
GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)/Trailer Weight			
Engine	**Rear axle ratio**	**Maximum GCWR-lb. (kg)**	**Trailer weight range-lb. (kg) (0-Maximum)**
4.0L SOHC Class II towing	3.55	8500 (3856)	0–3500 (0–1588)
4.6L* Class II towing	3.55	8500 (3856)	0–3500 (0–1588)
4.0L SOHC Class III/IV towing	3.73	10000 (4536)	0–5225 (0–2370)
4.6L* Class III/IV towing	3.55	12000 (5443)	0–7130 (0–3234)
Notes: - For high altitude operation, reduce GCW by 2% per 1,000 ft. (300 meters) elevation. For definitions of terms used in this table and instructions on how to calculate your vehicle load, refer to *Vehicle loading* in this chapter. Maximum trailer weights shown. The combined weight of the completed towing vehicle and the loaded trailer must not exceed the GCWR			
* -When towing maximum loads under high outside temperatures and/or on steep grades, the A/C system may cycle on and off to protect the engine from overheating. This may result in a temporary increase of interior temperatures.			

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4X4			
AWD			
GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)/Trailer Weight			
Engine	**Rear axle ratio**	**Maximum GCWR-lb. (kg)**	**Trailer weight range-lb. (kg) (0-Maximum)**
4.0L SOHC Class II towing	3.73	8500 (3856)	0–3500 (0–1588)
4.6L* Class II towing	3.55	8500 (3856)	0–3500 (0–1588)
4.0L SOHC Class III/IV towing	3.73	10000 (4536)	0–5000 (0–2268)
4.6L* Class III/IV towing	3.55	12000 (5443)	0–7130 (0–3234)
Notes: - For high altitude operation, reduce GCW by 2% per 1,000 ft. (300 meters) elevation. For definitions of terms used in this table and instructions on how to calculate your vehicle load, refer to *Vehicle loading* in this chapter. Maximum trailer weights shown. The combined weight of the completed towing vehicle and the loaded trailer must not exceed the GCWR			
* -When towing maximum loads under high outside temperatures and/or on steep grades, the A/C system may cycle on and off to protect the engine from overheating. This may result in a temporary increase of interior temperatures.			

Preparing to tow

Use the proper equipment for towing a trailer and make sure it is properly attached to your vehicle. See your authorized dealer or a reliable trailer dealer if you require assistance.

Hitches

Do not use hitches that clamp onto the vehicle bumper. Use a load carrying hitch. You must distribute the load in your trailer so that 10–15% of the total weight of the trailer is on the tongue, not to exceed the maximum tongue loads as stated:

- Class II receiver: 350 lb. (159 kg)
- Class III/IV receiver: 500 lb. (227 kg) (weight carrying); 740 lb. (336 kg) (weight distributing)

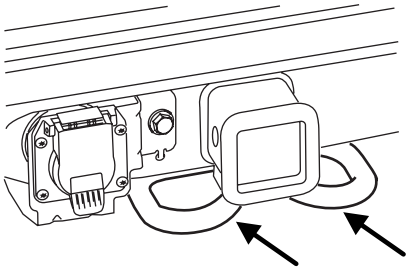
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety chains

Always connect the trailer's safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow slack for turning corners.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions that the rental agency gives to you.

Class III Trailer Hitch Safety Chain Loops can be used as recovery hooks.



Do not attach safety chains to the bumper.

Trailer brakes

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if installed properly and adjusted to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and Federal regulations.

Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

The braking system of the tow vehicle is rated for operation at the GVWR not GCWR.

Trailer lamps

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working. See your authorized dealer or trailer rental agency for proper instructions and equipment for hooking up trailer lamps.

Never connect any trailer lighting to the vehicle's taillamp circuits, because it may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving while you tow

When towing a trailer:

- To ensure proper "break-in" of powertrain components, do not trailer tow during the first 1,000 miles (1600 km) of a new vehicle.
- To ensure proper "break-in" of powertrain components during the first 500 miles (800 km) of trailer towing, drive no faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) with no full throttle starts.
- Turn off the speed control. The speed control may shut off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Consult your local motor vehicle speed regulations for towing a trailer.
- To eliminate excessive shifting, use a lower gear. This will also assist in transmission cooling. For additional information, refer to *Automatic transmission operation* in the *Driving* chapter.
- Under extreme conditions with large frontal trailers, high outside temperatures and highway speeds, the coolant gauge may indicate higher than normal coolant temperatures. If this occurs, reduce speed until the coolant temperature returns to the normal range. Refer to *Engine coolant temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.
- Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Do not exceed the GCWR rating or transmission damage may occur.

Servicing after towing

If you tow a trailer for long distances, your vehicle will require more frequent service intervals. Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for more information.

Trailer towing tips

- Practice turning, stopping and backing up before starting on a trip to get the feel of the vehicle trailer combination. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels will clear curbs and other obstacles.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached.
- If you are driving down a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- The trailer tongue weight should be 10–15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- If you will be towing a trailer frequently in hot weather, hilly conditions, at GCWR, or any combination of these factors, consider

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

refilling your rear axle with synthetic gear lube if not already so equipped. Refer to the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for the lubricant specification. Remember that regardless of the rear axle lube used, do not tow a trailer for the first 1,000 miles (1600 km) of a new vehicle, and that the first 500 miles (800 km) of towing be done at no faster than 70 mph (113 km/h) with no full throttle starts.

- After you have traveled 50 miles (80 km), thoroughly check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts.
- To aid in engine/transmission cooling and A/C efficiency during hot weather while stopped in traffic, place the gearshift lever in P (Park).
- Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. If you must park on a grade, place wheel chocks under the trailer's wheels.

Launching or retrieving a boat

Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water. Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after the trailer is removed from the water.

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- do not allow waves to break higher than 6 inches (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- causing internal damage to the components.
- affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant any time the axle has been submerged in water. Rear axle lubricant quantities are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or repair required.

RECREATIONAL TOWING

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are designed to ensure that your transmission is not damaged.

2WD vehicles: Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, no recreational towing is permitted.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, see *Wrecker Towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

4WD vehicles with electronic shift transfer case (Neutral tow kit accessory):

An accessory is available that allows you to tow your vehicle, behind another vehicle, with all the wheels on the ground. Contact your authorized dealer for more details. Do not tow your vehicle with all wheels on the ground unless you install the neutral tow kit as vehicle damage may occur.

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, see *Wrecker Towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

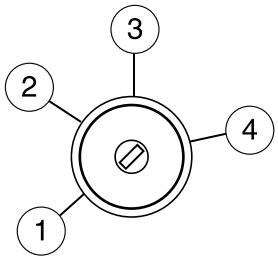
AWD vehicles: Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, no recreational towing is permitted.

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, see *Wrecker Towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STARTING

Positions of the ignition



1. OFF/LOCK, locks the gearshift lever and allows key removal. This position also shuts the engine and all electrical accessories off.

2. ACC, allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.

3. ON, all electrical circuits operational. Warning lights illuminated. Key position when driving.

4. START, cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

Preparing to start your vehicle

Engine starting is controlled by the powertrain control system.

This system meets all Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

When starting a fuel-injected engine, don't press the accelerator before or during starting. Only use the accelerator when you have difficulty starting the engine. For more information on starting the vehicle, refer to *Starting the engine* in this chapter.

Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. See *Guarding against exhaust fumes* in this chapter for more instructions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Important safety precautions

When the engine starts, the idle RPM runs faster to warm the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have the vehicle checked.

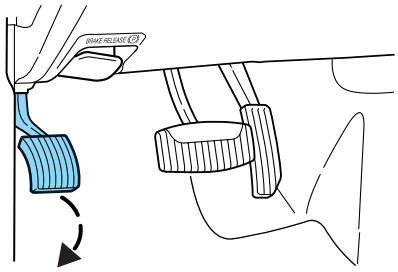
If the vehicle is operated in a heavy snow storm or blowing snow conditions, the engine air induction may become partially clogged with snow and/or ice. If this occurs the engine may experience a significant reduction in power output. At the earliest opportunity, clear all snow and/or ice away for the air induction inlet.

Before starting the vehicle:

1. Make sure all occupants buckle their safety belts. For more information on safety belts and their proper usage, refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

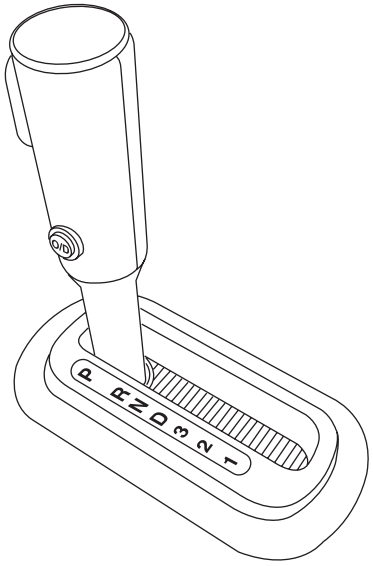
2. Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.

- Make sure the parking brake is set.

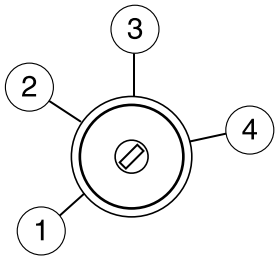


Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Make sure the gearshift is in P (Park).



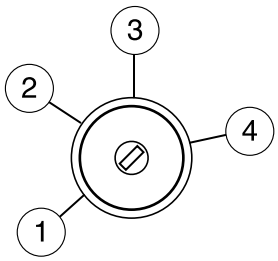
3. Turn the key to 3 (ON) without turning the key to 4 (START).



Some warning lights will briefly illuminate. See *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information regarding the warning lights.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting the engine



1. Turn the key to 3 (ON) without turning the key to 4 (START). If there is difficulty in turning the key, rotate the steering wheel until the key turns freely. This condition may occur when:

- the front wheels are turned
- a front wheel is against the curb

2. Turn the key to 4 (START), then release the key as soon as the engine starts. Excessive cranking could damage the starter.

Note: If the engine does not start on the first try, turn the key to OFF, wait 10 seconds and try again. If the engine still fails to start, press the accelerator to the floor and try again; this will allow the engine to crank with the fuel shut off in case the engine is flooded with fuel.

This vehicle has a computer assisted cranking system which assists in starting the engine. If the ignition key is turned to 4 (START) and then released when the engine begins cranking, the engine may continue cranking for up to 10 seconds or until the vehicle starts

Guarding against exhaust fumes

Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Important ventilating information

If the engine is idling while the vehicle is stopped for a long period of time, open the windows at least one inch (2.5 cm) or adjust the heating or air conditioning to bring in fresh air.

ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

An engine block heater warms the engine coolant which aids in starting and allows the heater/defroster system to respond quickly. If your vehicle is equipped with this system, your equipment includes a heater element which is installed in your engine block and a wire harness which allows

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

the user to connect the system to a grounded 120 volt a/c electrical source. The block heater system is most effective when outdoor temperatures reach below 0°F (-18°C).

Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or physical injury.

To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters.

Prior to using the engine block heater, follow these recommendations for proper and safe operation:

- For your safety, use an outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). Use only an extension cord that can be used outdoors, in cold temperatures, and is clearly marked ″Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances.″ Never use an indoor extension cord outdoors; it could result in an electric shock or fire hazard.
- Use a 16 gauge outdoor extension cord, minimum.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords. Instead, use one extension cord which is long enough to reach from the engine block heater cord to the outlet without stretching.
- Make certain that the extension cord is in excellent condition (not patched or spliced). Store your extension cord indoors at temperatures above 32°F (0°C). Outdoor conditions can deteriorate extension cords over a period of time.
- To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two pronged (cheater) adapters. Also ensure that the block heater, especially the cord, is in good condition before use.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug /engine block heater cord plug connection is free and clear of water in order to prevent possible shock or fire.
- Be sure that areas where the vehicle is parked are clean and clear of all combustibles such as petroleum products, dust, rags, paper and similar items.
- Be sure that the engine block heater, heater cord and extension cord are solidly connected. A poor connection can cause the cord to

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

become very hot and may result in an electrical shock or fire. Be sure to check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately a half hour.

- Finally, have the engine block heater system checked during your fall tune-up to be sure it's in good working order.

How to use the engine block heater

Ensure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. To clean them, use a dry cloth.

Depending on the type of factory installed equipment, your engine block heater system may consume anywhere between 400 watts or 1000 watts of energy per hour. Your factory installed block heater system does not have a thermostat; however, maximum temperature is attained after approximately 3 hours of operation. Block heater operation longer than 3 hours will not improve system performance and will unnecessarily use additional electricity.

Make sure system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving the vehicle. While not in use, make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the engine block heater cord plug.

BRAKES

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

Refer to *Brake system warning light* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.

Four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Your vehicle is equipped with an Anti-lock Braking System (ABS). This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking. Noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed during ABS braking and the brake pedal may suddenly travel a little farther as soon as ABS braking is done and normal brake operation resumes. These are normal characteristics of the ABS and should be no reason for concern.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using ABS

When hard braking is required, apply continuous force on the brake pedal; do not pump the brake pedal since this will reduce the effectiveness of the ABS and will increase your vehicle's stopping distance. The ABS will be activated immediately, allowing you to retain steering control during hard braking and on slippery surfaces. However, the ABS does not decrease stopping distance.

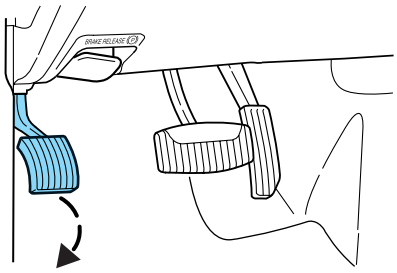
ABS warning lamp

The ABS lamp in the instrument cluster momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced.

Even when the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. If your BRAKE warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately.

Parking brake

Apply the parking brake whenever the vehicle is parked. To set the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down until the pedal stops.



The BRAKE warning lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates and remains illuminated (when the ignition is turned ON) until the parking brake is released.

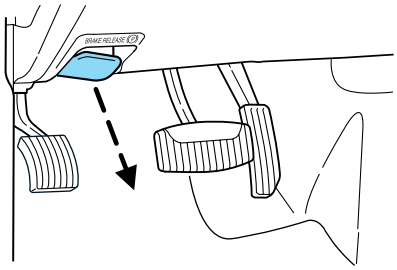
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).

If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

The parking brake is not recommended to stop a moving vehicle. However, if the normal brakes fail, the parking brake can be used to stop your vehicle in an emergency. Since the parking brake applies only the rear brakes, the vehicle's stopping distance will increase greatly and the handling of your vehicle will be adversely affected.

Pull the release lever to release the brake. Driving with the parking brake on will cause the brakes to wear out quickly and reduce fuel economy.



ADVANCETRAC® (ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL) WITH ROLL STABILITY CONTROL™ (RSC)

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC system provides stability enhancement features such as Roll Stability Control™ (RSC), Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control (TCS) for certain driving situations. The system includes an AdvanceTrac® with RSC on/off button, and a "sliding car" icon in the instrument cluster.

Some drivers may notice a slight movement of the brake pedal when the AdvanceTrac® with RSC performs a system self-check. During AdvanceTrac® with RSC operation you may experience the following:

- A rumble, grunting, or grinding noise after startup and when driving off
- A slight deceleration of the vehicle

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- The AdvanceTrac® with RSC indicator light will flash when the system is activated.
- If your foot is on the brake pedal, you will feel a vibration in the pedal.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal will move to apply higher brake forces. You may also hear a whoosh of air from under the instrument panel during this severe condition.

Traction Control

Traction Control helps your vehicle maintain traction, when driving on slippery and/or hilly road surfaces, by detecting and controlling wheel spin. Excessive wheel spin is controlled by momentarily reducing engine power and/or applying the anti-lock brakes. Traction Control is a driver aid that helps your vehicle.

If your vehicle should become stuck in deep snow or mud, try switching the AdvanceTrac® with RSC system off by pressing the AdvanceTrac® with RSC button momentarily. This will allow your tires to “dig” for traction. Remember to switch the AdvanceTrac® with RSC system back on once the vehicle is no longer stuck.

If the AdvanceTrac® with RSC system is activated excessively in a short period of time, the brake portion of the system will disable to allow the brakes to cool down. In this situation, Traction Control will use only engine power reduction to help control the wheels from over-spinning. When the brakes have cooled down, the system will again function normally. Anti-lock braking, RSC and ESC are not affected by this condition and will function normally during the cool-down period.

If the vehicle is stuck in snow or mud or when driving in deep sand, switching off the AdvanceTrac with RSC system may be beneficial so the wheels are allowed to spin. If your vehicle seems to lose engine power while driving in deep sand or very deep snow, switching off the AdvanceTrac with RSC stability enhancement feature will restore full engine power and will enhance momentum through the obstacle. Remember to switch the AdvanceTrac® with RSC system back on once the vehicle is no longer stuck.

During Traction Control events the “sliding car” icon in the instrument cluster will flash momentarily.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) with RSC system may enhance your vehicle’s stability during adverse maneuvers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC system helps the driver maintain steering control. AdvanceTrac® with RSC will attempt to correct the vehicle motion by applying brake force at individual tires and, if necessary, by reducing engine power.

During Electronic Stability Control events the “sliding car” icon in the instrument cluster will flash momentarily.

Driving maneuvers which may activate AdvanceTrac® with RSC system include:

- Taking a turn too fast.
- Maneuvering quickly to avoid an accident, pedestrian or obstacle.
- Driving over a patch of ice.
- Changing lanes on a snow-rutted road.
- Entering a snow-free road from a snow-covered side street, or vice versa.
- Entering a paved road from a gravel road, or vice versa.
- Driving on slick surfaces.
- Cornering while towing a heavily loaded trailer (refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.)

Roll Stability Control™ (RSC)

The RSC system works in conjunction with the AdvanceTrac® system to help maintain roll stability of the vehicle during aggressive maneuvers by applying brake force to one or more wheels.

During Roll Stability Control™ (RSC) events the “sliding car” icon in the instrument cluster will flash momentarily.

Driving conditions that may activate AdvanceTrac® with RSC include:

- Emergency lane-change
- Taking a turn too fast
- Quick maneuvering to avoid an accident, pedestrian or obstacle

AdvanceTrac® with RSC button and functionality

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC system automatically turns on each time the engine is started, even if it was turned off when the engine was last shut down. The “sliding car” icon which is located with the warning lights in the instrument cluster will illuminate during bulb check at initial start-up and then go off. This tells you that the system is normal and active. All functions of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC (RSC, ESC, Engine

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Traction Control, and Brake Traction Control) will be activated at start up. When the system is left active, the “sliding car” icon will flash only when any of the components of the system are affecting the vehicle’s performance, otherwise the light will remain off. Consequently, the “sliding car” icon will not be illuminated during most of your normal driving.

The AdvanceTrac® with RSC button, located on the center stack of the instrument panel, allows the driver to control certain features of the AdvanceTrac® with RSC system below 25 mph (40 km/h). If the vehicle is below 25 mph (40 km/h), momentarily pressing the AdvanceTrac® with RSC button will disable RSC, ESC and Engine Traction Control and steadily illuminate the “sliding car” icon . Pressing and holding the AdvanceTrac® with RSC button for more than five seconds will further disable the brake portion of the Traction Control feature and the “sliding car” icon will flash momentarily and then illuminate steady.

If the vehicle is above 25 mph (40 km/h), momentarily pressing the AdvanceTrac® with RSC button will steadily illuminate the “sliding car” icon , however, the AdvanceTrac® with RSC system will remain enabled until the vehicle speed drops below 25 mph (40 km/h). If the vehicle speed decreases below 25 mph (40 km/h), the system will become deactivated, but if the vehicle speed subsequently increases to above 25 mph (40 km/h), the system will again become active. In general, the system will be active at all times the vehicle speed is above 25 mph (40 km/h).

In R (Reverse), ABS and the Traction Control feature will continue to function, however ESC and RSC are disabled.

All these conditions are normal during AdvanceTrac® with RSC operation. Refer to the following table.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

AdvanceTrac® with RSC Features					
Button functions	**"Sliding car" icon**	**RSC**	**ESC**	**Engine Traction Control**	**Brake Traction Control**
Default at start-up	Illuminated during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled	Enabled
Button pressed momentarily	Illuminated solid	Disabled below 25 mph (40 km/h)	Disabled below 25 mph (40 km/h)	Disabled below 25 mph (40 km/h)	Enabled
Button pressed and held more than five seconds	Flashes then illuminated solid	Disabled below 25 mph (40 km/h)	Disabled below 25 mph (40 km/h)	Disabled below 25 mph (40 km/h)	Disabled below 25 mph (40 km/h)

Do not alter or modify your vehicle's suspension or steering; the resulting changes to the vehicle's handling can adversely affect the AdvanceTrac® with RSC system.

Aggressive driving in any road conditions can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of severe personal injury or death. The occurrence of a AdvanceTrac® with RSC event is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this may lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Operating your vehicle with AdvanceTrac® with RSC system disabled may severely reduce your ability to control your vehicle. If you experience a severe road event or any loss of vehicle control, SLOW DOWN.

If a failure is detected in the AdvanceTrac® with RSC system, and the AdvanceTrac® with RSC button has not been pushed, the warning indicator light in the instrument cluster will stay on. If the warning indicator light in the instrument cluster remains on while the engine is running, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEERING

To help prevent damage to the power steering system:

- Never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than a few seconds when the engine is running
- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (below the MIN mark on the reservoir).
- Some noise is normal during operation. If the noise is excessive, check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your authorized dealer.
- Heavy or uneven steering efforts may be caused by low power steering pump fluid level. Check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your authorized dealer.
- Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the MAX mark on the reservoir, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir.

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper steering alignment

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander/pull.

PREPARING TO DRIVE

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

Utility vehicles and trucks have larger tires and increased ground clearance, giving the vehicle a higher center of gravity than a passenger car.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility vehicles and trucks are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed or abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Loaded vehicles, with a higher center of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Do not overload your vehicle and use extra precautions, such as driving at slower speeds, avoiding abrupt steering changes and allowing for increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle. Over-loading or loading the vehicle improperly can deteriorate handling capability and contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

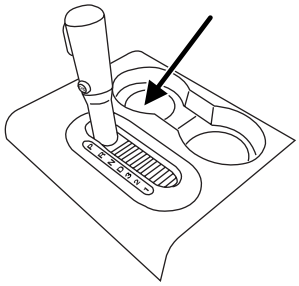
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION OPERATION

Brake-shift interlock

This vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) when the ignition is in the ON position unless brake pedal is depressed.

If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of P (Park) with ignition in the ON position and the brake pedal depressed:

1. Apply the parking brake, turn ignition key to LOCK, then remove the key.
2. Remove the rubber pad at the bottom of the cup holder to locate the access cap of the floor shifter assembly.
3. Using a screwdriver (or equivalent), remove the access panel and depress the shifter lever on the shift mechanism.



4. Apply the brake and shift into N (Neutral).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Return the cover plug to the console access hole. Start the vehicle.

If it is necessary to use the above procedure to move the gearshift lever, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brakelamps are not operating properly. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

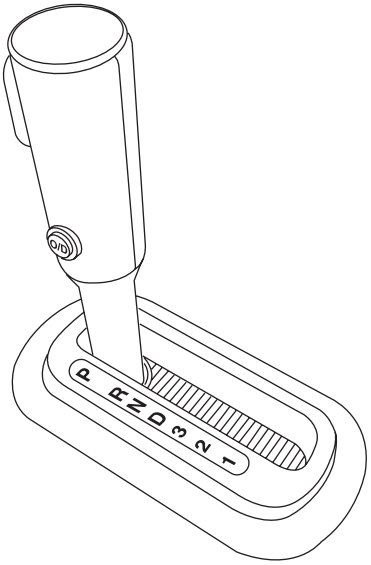
Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brakelamps are working.

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the LOCK position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving with a 5–speed automatic transmission (if equipped)



This vehicle is equipped with an Adaptive Transmission Control Strategy. This Adaptive Transmission Control Strategy offers the optimal transmission operation and shift quality. When the vehicle's battery has been disconnected for any type of service or repair, the transmission will need to relearn the normal shift strategy parameters, much like having to reset your radio stations when your vehicle battery has been disconnected. The Adaptive Transmission Control Strategy allows the transmission to relearn these operating parameters. This learning process could take several transmission upshifts and downshifts; during this learning process, slightly firmer shifts may occur. After this learning process, normal shift feel and shift scheduling will resume.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

P (Park)

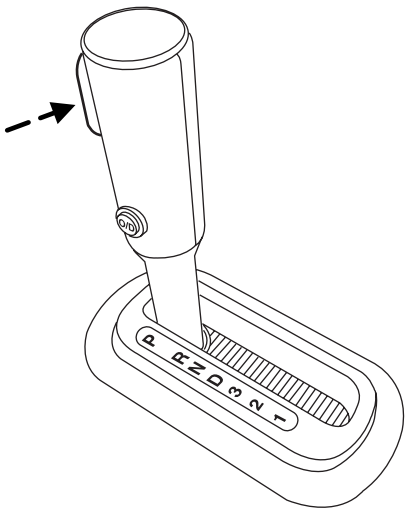
This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Start the engine
- Depress the brake pedal
- Press the gearshift release button on the front of the lever and move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the LOCK position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

R (Reverse)

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

N (Neutral)

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

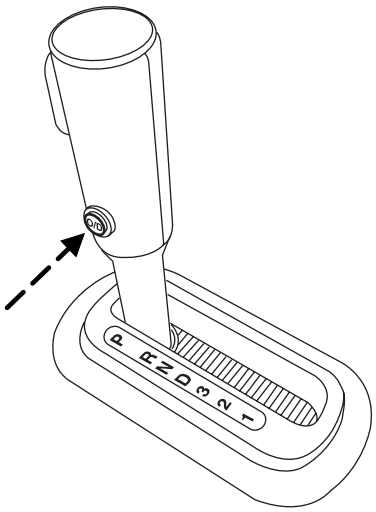
D (Drive) with Overdrive

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy. Transmission operates in gears one through five.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

D (Drive) without Overdrive

Overdrive can be deactivated by pressing the transmission control switch on the side of the gearshift lever.



- This position allows for all forward gears (1-4) except overdrive.
- Provides engine braking.
- Use when driving conditions cause excessive shifting from O/D to other gears. Examples: city traffic, hilly terrain, heavy loads, trailer towing and when engine braking is required.
- O/D OFF lamp is illuminated.

O/D OFF

- To return to O/D (overdrive mode), press the transmission control switch. The O/D OFF lamp will not be illuminated.
- O/D (Overdrive) is automatically returned each time the key is turned off.

3 (Third)

Transmission operates in third gear only.

Used for improved traction on slippery roads. Selecting 3 (Third) provides engine braking.

2 (Second)

Use 2 (Second) to start-up on slippery roads or to provide additional engine braking on downgrades.

1 (First)

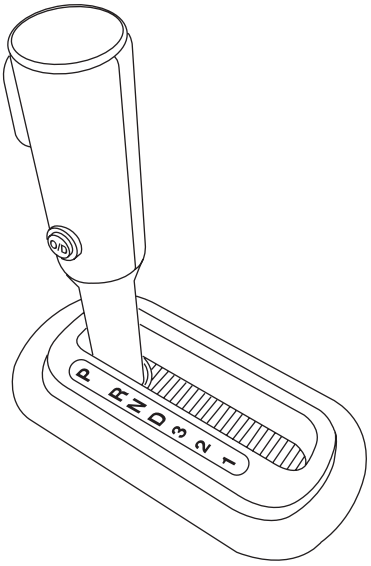
- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- Will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; allows for 1 (First) when vehicle reaches slower speeds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Forced downshifts

- Allowed in D (Overdrive) or Drive.
- Depress the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

Driving with a 6–speed automatic transmission (if equipped)



This vehicle is equipped with an Adaptive Transmission Control Strategy. This Adaptive Transmission Control Strategy offers the optimal transmission operation and shift quality. The transmission is equipped with a Transmission Control Module (TCM) located within the transmission assembly. When the battery is disconnected for any type of service or repair, the Adaptive Transmission Control Strategy parameters will be unaffected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

P (Park)

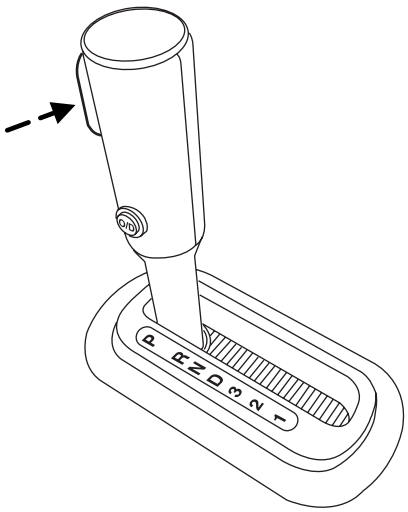
This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Depress the brake pedal
- Start the engine
- Press the gearshift lever release button (on the front of the lever) and shift into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the LOCK position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

R (Reverse)

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

N (Neutral)

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

D (Drive) with Overdrive

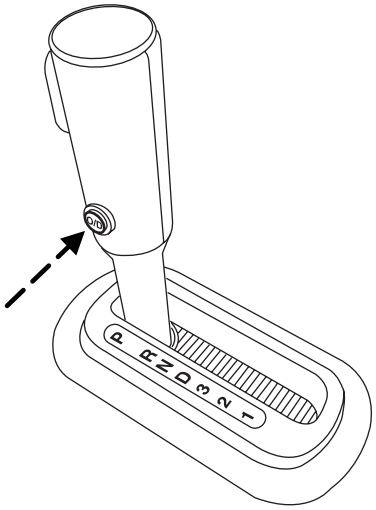
The normal driving position for the best fuel economy. Transmission operates in gears one through six except in 4WD Low where transmission operates in gears two through six.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

D (Drive) without Overdrive

Overdrive can be deactivated by pressing the transmission control switch on the side of the shift lever.

- This position allows for all forward gears (1-4) except overdrive.
- Provides engine braking.
- Use when driving conditions cause excessive shifting from O/D to other gears. Examples: city traffic, hilly terrain, heavy loads, trailer towing and when engine braking is required.



- O/D OFF lamp is illuminated.

O/D OFF

- To return to O/D (overdrive mode), press the transmission control switch. The O/D OFF lamp will not be illuminated.
- O/D (Overdrive) is automatically returned each time the key is turned off.

3 (Third)

Transmission operates in third gear only.

Used for improved traction on slippery roads. Selecting 3 (Third) provides engine braking.

2 (Second)

Transmission operates in 2nd gear only.

Use 2 (Second) to start-up on slippery roads or to provide additional engine braking on downgrades.

1 (First)

- Transmission operates in 1st gear only.
- Provides maximum engine braking.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- Will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; allows for 1 (First) when vehicle reaches slower speeds.

Forced downshifts

- Allowed in D (Drive) only.
- Depress the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.

REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The reverse sensing system sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper when the R (Reverse) gear is selected.

To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the reverse sensing system as contained in this section. The park assist is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at “parking speeds”. Inclement weather may also affect the function of the RSS; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

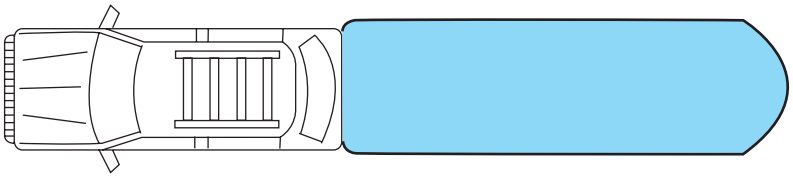
To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in R (Reverse) and when using the reverse sensing system.

This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the reverse sensing system may create false beeps.

The system will assist the driver in detecting certain objects while the vehicle moves in reverse at speeds less than 6 mph (10 km/h). The system is not effective at speeds greater than 6 mph (10 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.



The system detects obstacles within approximately 16 feet (five meters), at speeds above 2.5 mph (4 km/h) behind the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper. If vehicle speed is below 2.5 mph (4 km/h), the system detects obstacles within approximately 9 feet (2.6 meters) behind the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper. As you move closer to the obstacle, the rate of the tone increases. When the distance to the obstacle is approximately less than 18 inches (45.0 cm), the tone will sound continuously. If the system detects an object that is approaching the vehicle at such a rate that rapid braking is required, a very high rate tone will sound. If this tone is heard while reversing, the driver is advised to slow down immediately until the tone either changes to a slower rate or stops.

While receiving a warning the radio volume will be reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio will return to the previous value.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Audible Warnings	
Distance to Object	**Warning**
Speed above 2.5 mph (4 km/h)	
up to 1.6 feet (.5 meters)	Solid
1.6 feet (.5 meters) to 3.1 feet (1 meter)	Fast beep
3.1 feet (1 meter) to 5.7 feet (1.8 meters)	Medium/fast beep
5.7 feet (1.8 meters) to 9 feet (2.8 meters)	Medium beep
9 feet (2.8 meters) to 13 feet (4 meters)	Medium/slow beep
13 feet (4 meters) to 19.6 feet (6 meters)	Slow beep
Speed below 2.5 mph (4 km/h)	
up to 1.4 feet (.4 meters)	Solid
1.4 feet (.4 meters) to 3 feet (.9 meters)	Fast beep
3 feet (.9 meters) to 4.5 feet (1.4 meters)	Medium beep
4.5 feet (1.4 meters) to 6.3 feet (1.9 meters)	Medium/slow beep
6.3 feet (1.9 meters) to 8.7 feet (2.6 meters)	Slow beep
8.7 feet (2.6 meters) to 16.4 feet (5 meters)	No sound

The reverse sensing system is automatically enabled when the gear selector is placed in R (Reverse) and the ignition is ON. A control in the message center allows the driver to disable the system only when the ignition is ON and the gear selector is in R (Reverse). Refer to *Message center* in the *Driver Controls* chapter.

The message center will indicate the system is OFF and will not allow the driver to switch the system ON to indicate a failure of the reverse sensing system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The radar sensor is located behind the rear bumper/fascia. Always keep the rear bumper/fascia free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. These elements may cause the system to operate inaccurately.

If the vehicle sustains damage to the rear bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see *Preparing to drive your vehicle* in this chapter.

Four–wheel drive (4WD) supplies power to all four wheels. Do not use 4X4 High or 4X4 Low on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so will produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and may damage drive components. 4X4 High and 4X4 Low are only intended for consistently slippery or loose surfaces. The use of 4X4 High or 4X4 Low on these surfaces may produce some noise, such as occasional clunks, but will not damage the drive system.

If equipped with the Electronic Shift 4WD System, and 4WD Low is selected while the vehicle is moving above 3 mph (5 km/h), the 4WD system will not engage. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. Refer to *Shifting to/from 4WD Low* for proper operation.

System indicator lights

- **4X4** - momentarily illuminates when the vehicle is started. Illuminates when 4X4 HIGH (4WD High) is selected.

4x4

- **4X4 LOW** – momentarily illuminates when the vehicle is started. Illuminates when 4X4 LOW (4WD Low) is selected.

4x4
LOW

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the Control Trac 4WD system

4X4 AUTO - Provides electronically-controlled four-wheel drive with power delivered to all four wheels as required for traction. This mode is appropriate for all on-road driving conditions, including dry road surfaces, wet pavement, snow and gravel.

4X4 HIGH (4WD High) - Provides locked four-wheel drive power to all four wheels. This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement. This mode is appropriate for severe winter and off-road conditions, such as deep snow, ice or shallow sand.

4X4 LOW (4WD Low) - Provides locked four-wheel drive power when extra power at reduced speeds is required. This mode is not recommended for use on dry pavement. Use this mode for off-road, low-speed operation or when extra power is required, such as climbing steep grades, going through deep sand, or pulling a boat out of the water.

Shifting between 4X4 AUTO (4WD Auto) and 4X4 HIGH (4WD High)

- Select 4X4 AUTO (4WD Auto) or 4X4 HIGH (4WD High) at any forward speed.

Note: Do not perform this operation if the rear wheels are slipping.

Shifting to/from 4X4 LOW (4WD Low)

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop
2. Place the transmission in N (Neutral).
3. Press the desired 4WD position.

- If shifting into 4x4 LOW (4WD Low), wait for the 4X4 LOW light in the instrument cluster to turn **on** indicating the shift is complete.
- If shifting out of 4X4 LOW (4WD Low), wait for the 4X4 LOW light in the instrument cluster to turn **off** indicating the shift is complete.

If any of the above shift conditions are not met, the shift will not occur and the message center will display the appropriate information.

ALL WHEEL DRIVE (AWD) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

For the lubricant specification and refill capacity of the AWD transfer case refer to *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If your vehicle is equipped with AWD, a spare tire of a different size than the road tires should never be used. Such a tire could make the vehicle difficult to control as well as result in damage to driveline components.

Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles.

Normal operation (4.0L engine vehicles only)

The AWD system is always active and requires no driver input. It is capable of handling all road conditions, including street and highway driving as well as off-road conditions such as deep snow, ice or shallow sand.

Normal operation (4.6L engine vehicles only)

During normal operation the AWD system is in AWD AUTO mode (AWD LOCKED will illuminate in the message center for four seconds when you first start your vehicle). The 4X4 indicator in the instrument cluster will also come on.

For instructions on selecting the AWD LOCKED mode, refer to *Message center* in the *Driver Controls* chapter. This mode is not intended for use on dry pavement. This mode is appropriate for severe winter or off-road conditions such as deep snow, ice or shallow sand. The use of AWD LOCKED on dry or hard surfaces may produce some noise, such as occasional clunks, but will not damage the drive system.

Autolock operation (4.6L engine vehicles only)

If the AWD system begins to overheat, the system will place itself in the Autolock mode:

- the 4X4 indicator light will illuminate in the instrument cluster and AWD DISABLED <LOCKED> will be displayed in the message center.
- AWD LOCKED will be displayed in the message center for four seconds and a warning chime will sound. This condition may clear without any action being taken by the driver.
- the 4X4 indicator light in the instrument cluster will turn off when the AWD system cools down.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving off-road with truck and utility vehicles

AWD and 4WD vehicles are specially equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough terrain and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the road.

How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

Truck and utility vehicles can differ from some other vehicles. Your vehicle may be higher to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.

The differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

Maintain steering wheel control at all times, especially in rough terrain. Since sudden changes in terrain can result in abrupt steering wheel motion, make sure you grip the steering wheel from the outside. Do not grip the spokes.

Drive cautiously to avoid vehicle damage from concealed objects such as rocks and stumps.

You should either know the terrain or examine maps of the area before driving. Map out your route before driving in the area. To maintain steering and braking control of your vehicle, you must have all four wheels on the ground and they must be rolling, not sliding or spinning.

Basic operating principles

- Do not use 4WD High or 4WD Low on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so will produce excessive noise, increase tire wear, reduce fuel economy and may damage drive components. 4WD modes are only intended for consistently slippery or loose surfaces.
- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

If your vehicle gets stuck

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the LOCK position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Emergency maneuvers

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid “over-driving” your vehicle, i.e.,

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency. Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.

- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.

Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

4WD Systems

4WD uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case. On 4WD vehicles, the transfer case allows you to select 4WD when necessary. Information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures can be found in this chapter. Information on transfer case maintenance can be found in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

Parking

On some 4WD vehicles, when the transfer case is in the N (Neutral) position, the engine and transmission are disconnected from the rest of the driveline. Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the automatic

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

transmission is in P (Park) or the manual transmission is in gear. Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position. Always set the parking brake fully and turn off the ignition when leaving the vehicle.

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the LOCK position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

AWD Systems (if equipped)

AWD uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

Sand

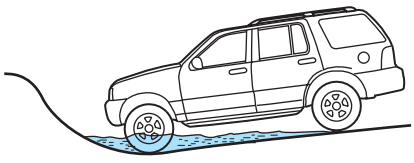
When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), the system indicator light may illuminate depending on how much air is released from your tires and/or how long you drive the vehicle under these conditions.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

Mud and water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.



When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the hubs (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even AWD and 4WD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

If the transmission, transfer case or front axle are submerged in water, their fluids should be checked and changed, if necessary.

Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant should be replaced.

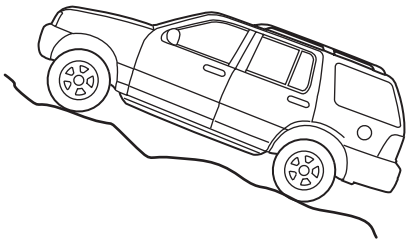
After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

"Tread Lightly" is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nations wilderness areas. Ford Motor Company joins the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by "treading lightly."

Driving on hilly or sloping terrain

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down. **Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills.** A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

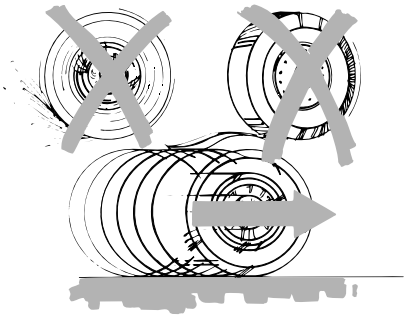
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, do not try to turn around because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, disengage overdrive or manually shift to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. When you brake hard, the front wheels can't turn and if they aren't turning, you won't be able to steer. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer the vehicle. Rapid pumping of the brake pedal will help you slow the vehicle and still maintain steering control.

If your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not "pump" the brakes.

Driving on snow and ice

AWD and 4WD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although an AWD or a 4WD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, avoid locking of the wheels. Use a “squeeze” technique, push on the brake pedal with a steadily increasing force which allows the wheels to brake yet continue to roll so that you may steer in the direction you want to travel. If you lock the wheels, release the brake pedal and repeat the squeeze technique. If your vehicle is equipped with a Four Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), apply the brake steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes. Refer to the *Brakes* section of this chapter for additional information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system.

Never drive with chains on the front tires of AWD or 4WD vehicles without also putting them on the rear tires. This could cause the rear to slide and swing around during braking.

Maintenance and Modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

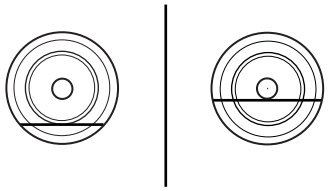
Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will roll over as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder racks or pickup box cover).

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to heavy off-road usage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly especially when the depth is not known. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).



When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall. **Driving through deep water where the transmission vent tube is submerged may allow water into the transmission and cause internal transmission damage.**

Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Getting roadside assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24–hours, seven days a week
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner Guide portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit)
- battery jump start
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility)
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford/Mercury/Lincoln eligible vehicle towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56.3 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56.3 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56.3 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to $200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

Canadian customers refer to your Customer Information Guide for information on:

- coverage period
- exact fuel amounts

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- towing of your disabled vehicle
- emergency travel expense reimbursement
- travel planning benefits

Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In the United States, this card is found in the Owner Guide portfolio in the glove compartment. In Canada, the card is found in the *Customer Information Guide* in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford or Mercury vehicle customers who require roadside assistance, call 1–800–241–3673; Lincoln vehicle customers call 1–800–521–4140.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1–800–665–2006.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles. To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford, Mercury and Lincoln vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

Canadian customers who need to obtain reimbursement information, call 1–800–665–2006.

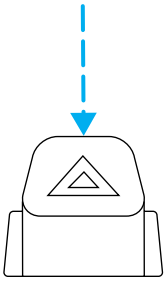
Roadside coverage beyond basic warranty

In the United States, you may purchase additional roadside assistance coverage beyond this period through the Ford Auto Club by contacting your authorized dealer or by calling 1–800–FORD–CLUB.

Similarly in Canada, for uninterrupted Roadside Assistance coverage, you may purchase extended coverage prior to your Basic Warranty's Roadside Assistance expiring. For more information and enrollment, contact 1–877–294–2582 or visit our website at www.ford.ca.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

HAZARD FLASHER CONTROL



The hazard flasher is located on the steering column, just behind the steering wheel. The hazard flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition.

Push in the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash. Press the flasher control again to turn them off. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

Note: With extended use, the flasher may run down your battery.

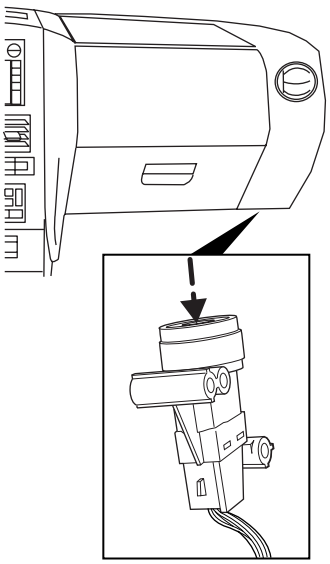
FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF SWITCH

The fuel pump shut-off switch is a device intended to stop the electric fuel pump when your vehicle has been involved in a substantial jolt.

After a collision, if the engine cranks but does not start, the fuel pump shut-off switch may have been activated.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The fuel pump shut-off switch is located in the passenger's foot well, by the kick panel.



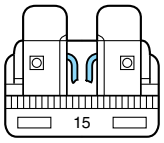
Use the following procedure to reset the fuel pump shut-off switch.

1. Turn the ignition to the OFF position.
2. Check the fuel system for leaks.
3. If no fuel leak is apparent, reset the fuel pump shut-off switch by pushing in on the reset button.
4. Turn the ignition to the ON position. Pause for a few seconds and return the key to the OFF position.
5. Make a further check for leaks in the fuel system.

FUSES AND RELAYS

Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Note: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

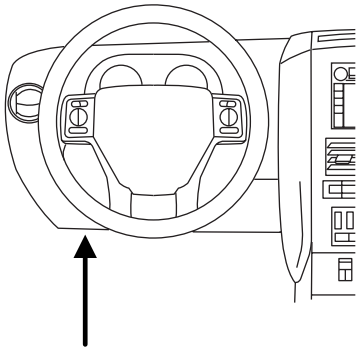
Standard fuse amperage rating and color

COLOR				
Fuse rating	**Mini fuses**	**Standard fuses**	**Maxi fuses**	**Cartridge maxi fuses**
2A	Grey	Grey	—	—
3A	Violet	Violet	—	—
4A	Pink	Pink	—	—
5A	Tan	Tan	—	—
7.5A	Brown	Brown	—	—
10A	Red	Red	—	—
15A	Blue	Blue	—	—
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	—	—
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink
40A	—	—	Orange	Green
50A	—	—	Red	Red
60A	—	—	Blue	Yellow
70A	—	—	Tan	—
80A	—	—	Natural	—

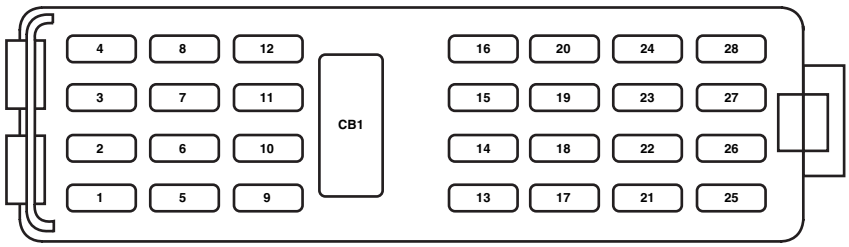
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Passenger compartment fuse panel

The fuse panel is located below the instrument panel on the driver's side.



To remove a fuse use the fuse puller tool provided on the fuse panel box.



The fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel Description
1	20A	Moonroof, Adjustable pedals, Memory seats, Memory lumbar motor
2	5A	Microcontroller power (SJB)
3	20A	Radio
4	10A	OBD II connector

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel Description
5	5A	Moonroof, Door lock switch illumination, Rearview mirror with microphone
6	20A	Liftglass release motor, Door unlock/lock
7	15A	Trailer stop/turn
8	15A	Ignition switch power, PATS, Cluster
9	2A	6R TCM/PCM (Ignition RUN/START), Fuel pump relay
10	5A	Front wiper RUN/ACC relay in PDB
11	5A	Radio start
12	5A	Rear wiper motor RUN/ACC, Trailer battery charge relay in PDB, Radio
13	15A	Heated mirror, Manual climate rear defrost indicator
14	20A	Horn
15	10A	Reverse lamps
16	10A	Trailer reverse lamps
17	10A	RCM (restraints), Passenger occupancy
18	10A	Reverse park aid, IVD switch, IVD, 4x4 module, 4x4 switch, Heated seat switches, Compass, Electrochromatic mirror, AUX climate control
19	—	Not used
20	10A	Manual climate, DEATC, Brake shift
21	—	Not used

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel Description
22	15A	Brake switch, Bi-color stop lamps, CHMSL, All turn lamps
23	15A	Interior lamps, Puddle lamps, Battery saver, Instrument illumination, Homelink
24	10A	Cluster, Theft LED
25	15A	Trailer tow park lamps
26	15A	License plate/rear park lamp, Front park lamps, Manual climate
27	15A	Tri-color stop lamps
28	10A	Manual/DEATC
CB1	25A	Windows

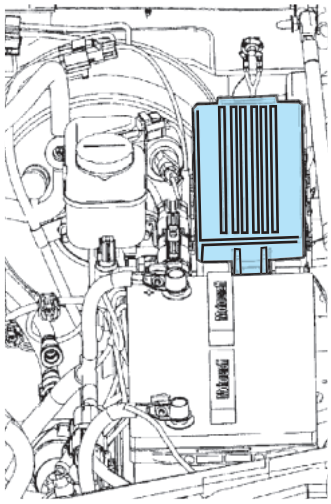
The following relays are located on either side of the passenger compartment fuse panel. See your authorized dealer for service of these relays.

Fuse/Relay Location	Description
Relay 1	Delayed ACC

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power distribution box

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. The power distribution box contains high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

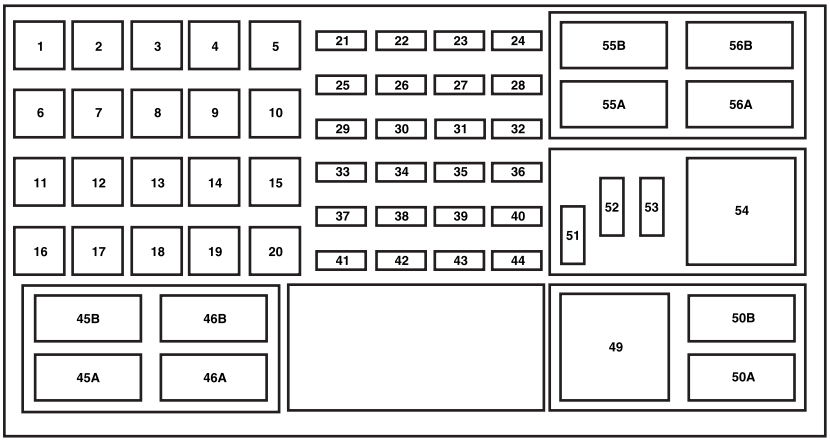


Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the Power Distribution Box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



The high-current fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Power Distribution Box Description
1	50A**	BATT 2 (SJB)
2	50A**	BATT 3 (SJB)
3	50A**	BATT 1 (SJB)
4	30A**	Fuel pump, Injectors
5	30A**	Third row seat (left)
6	40A**	ABS pump
7	40A**	Powertrain Control Module (PCM)
8	40A**	Heated windshield (left)
9	40A**	Heated windshield (right)
10	30A**	Power seat (right)
11	30A**	Starter
12	30A**	Third row seat (right)
13	30A**	Trailer tow battery charger

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Power Distribution Box Description
14	30A**	Memory seats (DSM)
	40A**	Non-memory seats
15	40A**	Rear defrost, Heated mirrors
16	40A**	Front blower motor
17	30A**	Trailer electronic brakes
18	30A**	Auxiliary blower motor
19	30A**	Running boards
20	30A**	Front wiper motor
21	20A*	Rear power point
22	20A*	Subwoofer
23	20A*	4x4
24	10A*	Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Keep Alive Power, Canister vent
25	20A*	Front power point/Cigar lighter
26	20A*	4x4 module
27	20A*	6R Transmission module (4.6L engine only)
28	20A*	Heated seats
29	15A*	Headlamps (right)
30	25A*	Rear wiper
31	15A*	Fog lamps
32	5A*	Power mirrors
33	30A*	ABS valve
34	15A*	Headlamps (left)
35	10A*	AC clutch
36	20A*	Console bin power point
37	30A*	Driver window motor
38	15A*	5R Transmission (4.0L engine only)
39	15A*	PCM power

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Power Distribution Box Description
40	15A*	Fan clutch, PCV valve (4.0L engine only), AC clutch relay, GCC fan
41	15A*	SDARS, DVD, SYNC
42	15A*	Redundant brake switch, EVMV, MAFS, HEGO, EVR, VCT1 (4.6L engine only), VCT2 (4.6L engine only), CMCV (4.6L engine only), CMS
43	15A*	Coil on plug (4.6L engine only), Coil tower (4.0L engine only)
44	15A*	Injectors
45B	—	GCC fan relay
45A	—	Not used
46B	—	Not used
46A	—	Not used
49	—	Fuel pump relay
50B	—	A/C clutch relay
50A	—	Fog lamps relay
51	—	Not used
52	—	Not used
53	—	One Touch Integrated Start (OTIS) (diode)
54	—	Trailer battery charger relay
55B	—	Front wiper relay
55A	—	PCM relay
56B	—	Starter relay
56A	—	Blower relay
* Mini Fuses ** Cartridge Fuses		

CHANGING THE TIRES

If you get a flat tire while driving:

- do not brake heavily.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- gradually decrease the vehicle's speed.
- hold the steering wheel firmly.
- slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Note: The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) indicator light will illuminate when the spare is in use. To restore the full functionality of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensor, refer to *Changing tires with TPMS* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible.

The use of tire sealants may damage your Tire Pressure Monitoring System and should not be used.

Refer to *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for important information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information

Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

Note: Turn off the power running boards (if equipped) before driving with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. Refer to *Running boards* in the *Driver Controls* chapter.

If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire/wheel that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter "T" for tire size and may have "Temporary Use Only" molded in the sidewall

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: "THIS TIRE AND WHEEL FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY"

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Tow a trailer
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire/wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Wet weather driving capability
- All-Wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel additional caution should be given to:

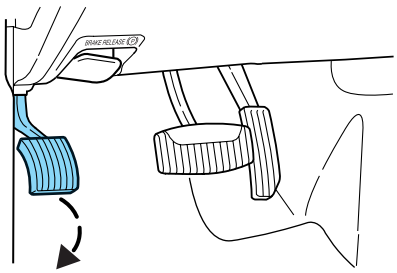
- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel and seek service as soon as possible.

Stopping and securing the vehicle

1. Park on a level surface, activate the hazard flashers and set the parking brake.

2. Place gearshift lever in P (Park) and turn engine OFF.



3. Turn off the power running boards (if equipped). Refer to *Running boards* in the *Driver Controls* chapter.

Note: Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

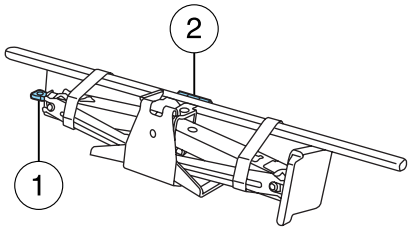
Location of the spare tire and tools

The spare tire and tools for your vehicle are stowed in the following locations:

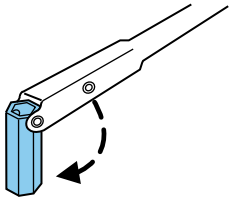
Tool	Location
Spare tire	Under the vehicle, just in front of the rear bumper. The spare tire winch drive nut is located at the rear center of the cargo area under a lid.
Jack, lug nut wrench, jack handle, wheel chock	Behind the rear seat under the carpeted floor lid in the cargo floor. The tools are located in a bag attached to the jack.

Removing the jack and tools

1. Open liftgate and remove the carpeted floor lid.
2. Turn jack screw eyelet (1) counterclockwise to release pressure.
3. Rotate the locking pin (2) clockwise until loose then pull out until it stops and remove the jack and tool bag from the bracket.



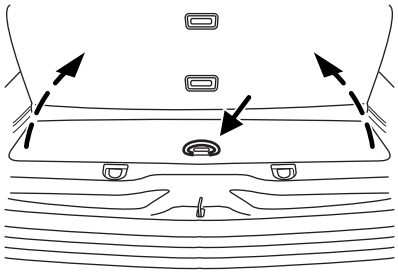
4. Remove the chock and jack tools from the provided bag rotate the wrench socket out from the handle.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Removing the spare tire

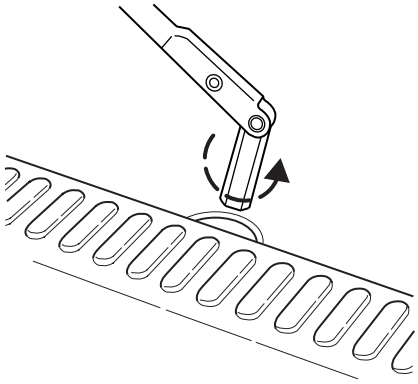
Do not use an impact wrench on the winch drive nut. This will damage the spare tire winch.



1. Open the cover from the carpeting on cargo floor to expose the winch drive nut.

2. Insert the lug wrench on the winch drive nut.

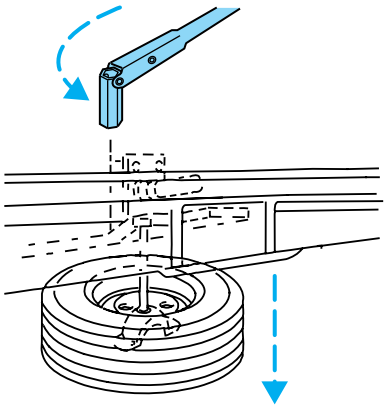
The wrench will stop moving and forward resistance to turning will be felt when properly engaged.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Turn the wrench counterclockwise until the tire is lowered to the ground and the cable has slack. When turning the wrench, make sure that it does not scuff the kick plate.

4. Slide the tire rearward, lift one side and remove the retainer from the spare tire.



Changing the spare tire

When one of the rear wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in P (Park).

To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.

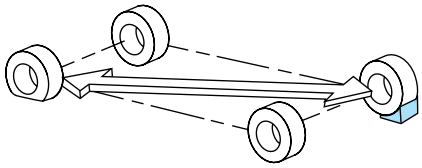
If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

Turn off the running boards (if equipped) before working under the vehicle, jacking, or placing any object under the vehicle. Never place your hand in the hinge assemblies. A moving running board may cause injury.

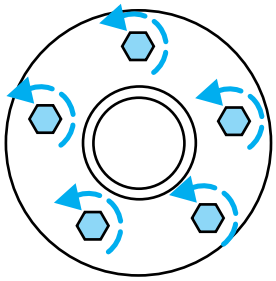
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Block the wheel that is diagonally opposite of the flat tire using the wheel chock provided with your vehicle.

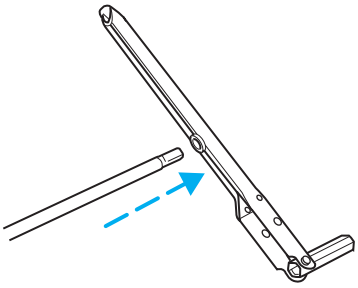


2. Use the tip of the lug wrench to remove the beauty cap by twisting the tip under the cap. On 5–passenger vehicles, the carpeted floor lid can be used as a kneeling pad.

3. Loosen each wheel lug nut by half a turn, but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.



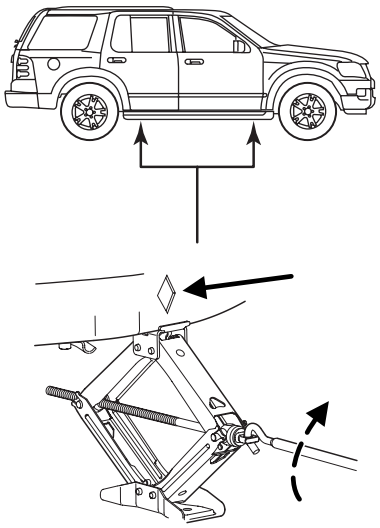
4. Assemble the jack handle extension on the lug nut wrench by sliding the square end of the jack handle through the plastic grommet on the lug nut wrench and into the square hole on the other side.



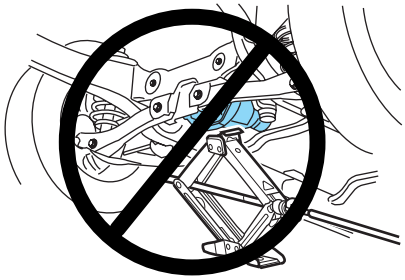
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Position the jack according to the illustrated guides and turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is a maximum of 1 inch (25 mm) off the ground.

Note: Do not use the running boards, front and rear hinge assemblies, running board motors, or the running board underbody mounts to lift the vehicle with the jack.



To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while changing a tire. Do not start the engine when your vehicle is on the jack. The jack is only meant for changing the tire.



- **Never use the front or rear differential as a jacking point.**

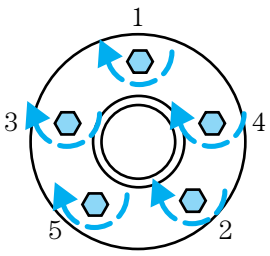
6. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

7. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall the lug nuts, cone side in, until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

8. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

9. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* later in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification.



Stowing the flat/spare tire

Note: Failure to follow spare tire stowage instructions may result in failure of cable or loss of spare tire.

1. Lay the tire on the ground with the valve stem facing up, toward the vehicle.

2. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.

3. Turn the lug wrench clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The effort to turn the jack handle increases significantly and the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to the maximum tightness. Tighten to the best of your ability, to the point where the ratchet/slip occurs, if possible. The spare tire carrier will not allow you to overtighten. If the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips with little effort, take the vehicle to your authorized dealer for assistance at your earliest convenience.

4. Check that the tire lies flat against the frame and is properly tightened. Try to push or pull, then turn the tire to be sure it will not move. Loosen and retighten, if necessary. Failure to properly stow the spare tire may result in failure of the winch cable and loss of the tire.

5. If your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire lock and key, be sure to install the spare tire lock into the bumper drive tube with the spare tire lock key and jack handle.

6. Repeat this tightness check procedure when servicing the spare tire pressure (every six months, per *scheduled maintenance information),* or at any time that the spare tire is disturbed through service of other components.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Re-stowing the jack and tools

1. Unblock the wheels.

2. Stow the wheel ornament (if removed) in a safe location in the vehicle (such as the glove box or jack stowage compartment) so it will not become damaged. Re-install the wheel ornament onto the wheel once the tire is repaired or replaced.

3. Stow the jack and tools in their respective locations, making sure they are fully secured so they do not rattle when you drive.

WHEEL LUG NUT TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

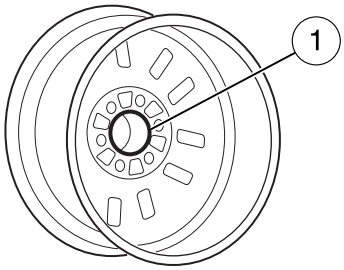
Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 100 miles (160 km) after any wheel disturbance (rotation, flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

Lug nut socket size/Bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*	
	lb.ft.	N•m
Lug nut socket size: ¾ inch (19 mm) hex Bolt size: ½ x 20	100	135
* Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.		

When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Note: Inspect the wheel pilot hole prior to installation. If there is visible corrosion in wheel pilot hole, remove loose particles by wiping with clean rag and apply grease. Apply grease only to the wheel pilot hole surface by smearing a “dime” (1 square cm) sized glob of grease around the wheel pilot surface (1) with end of finger. DO NOT apply grease to lugnut/stud holes or wheel-to-brake surfaces.



RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

If your vehicle is equipped with an Easy Fuel™ ″no cap″ fuel system and you have run out of fuel and need to refill the vehicle with a portable fuel container, see *Running out of Fuel* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for proper fuel filling method using a portable fuel container and the included fuel filler funnel. **Do not** insert the nozzle of portable fuel container or any type of aftermarket funnel into the capless fuel system as it can be damaged. You must use the included funnel in such circumstances.

Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the Easy Fuel™ ″no cap″ fuel system. This could damage the Easy Fuel™ ″no cap″ fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

JUMP STARTING

The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.

Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Preparing your vehicle

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the automatic transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

1. **Use only a 12–volt supply to start your vehicle.**

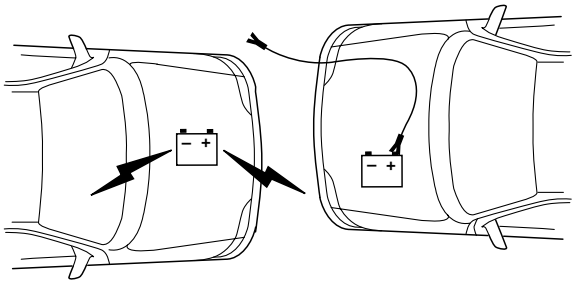
2. Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

3. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.

4. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.

5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

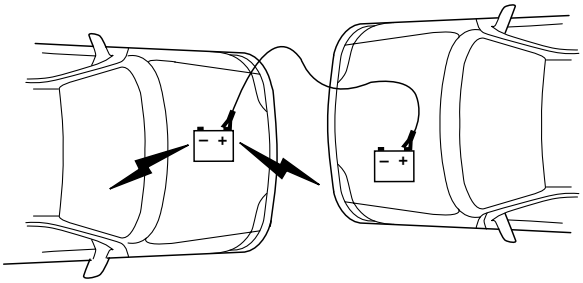
Connecting the jumper cables



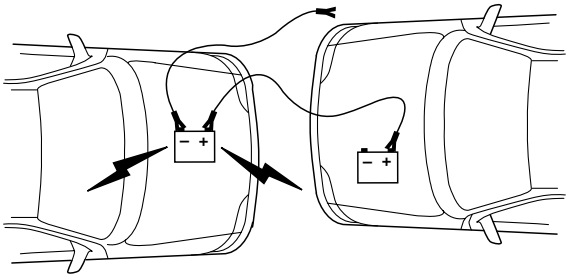
1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

Note: In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

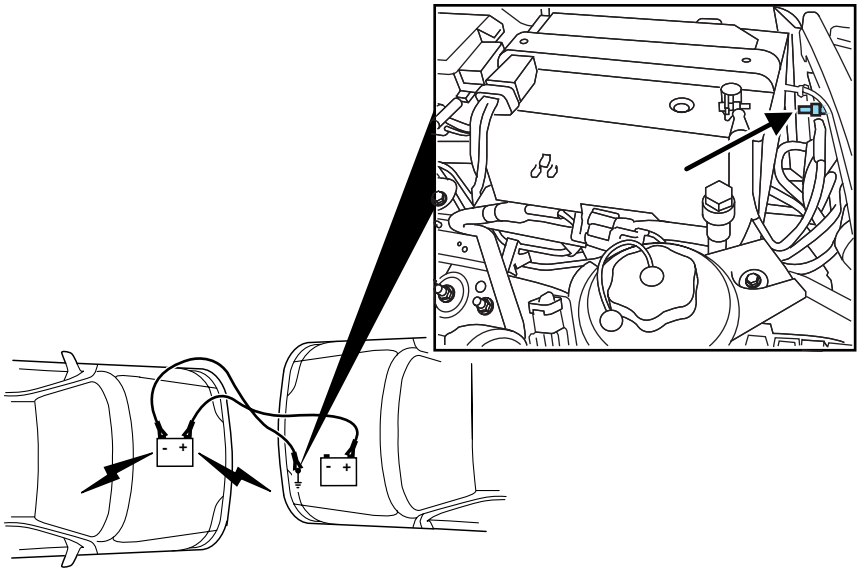


2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.



3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to the ground stud located toward the front of the vehicle (forward of the battery) on the radiator support. Keep the negative (-) cable away from the battery and the carburetor/fuel injection system. **Do not** use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as *grounding* points.

Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

5. Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

Jump starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.

2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

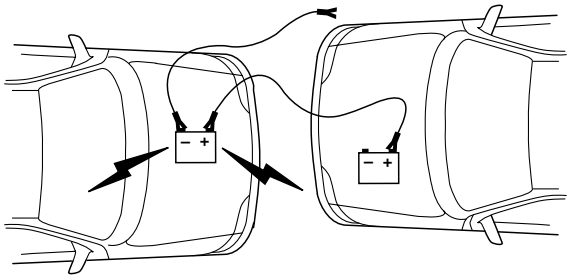
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

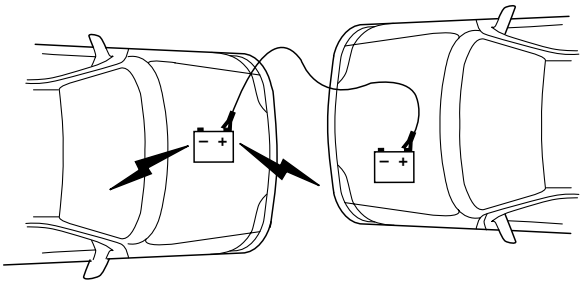
Removing the jumper cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

1. Remove the jumper cable from the *ground* metal surface.

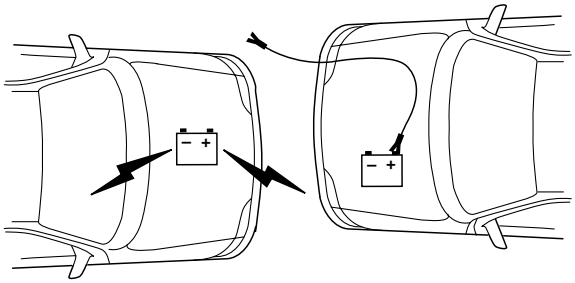


2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) connection of the booster vehicle's battery.



3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

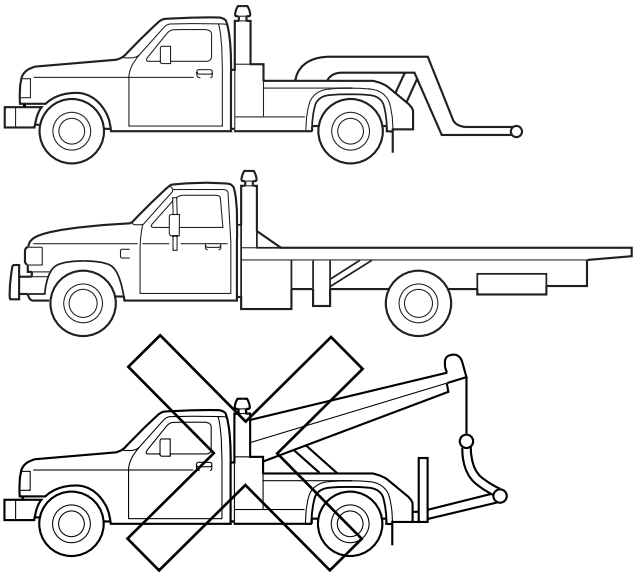


4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can relearn its idle conditions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WRECKER TOWING



Note: Turn off the power running boards (if equipped) prior to preparing the vehicle for towing. Refer to *Running boards* in the *Driver Controls* chapter.

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.

If the vehicle's battery is discharged, refer to *Automatic transmission operation* in the *Driving* chapter for directions on how to move the gearshift lever out of the P (Park) position, for proper towing.

On 4x2 vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the rear wheels off the ground.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

On 4x4/AWD vehicles, it is recommended that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground.

If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

Emergency Towing

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) your vehicle (regardless of transmission powertrain configuration) can be flat towed (all wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- Vehicle is facing forward.
- Place the transmission in N (Neutral).
- Maximum speed is not to exceed 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 km).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

At home

You must take your Ford vehicle to an authorized dealer for warranty repairs. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction. Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and/or equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer. A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.

3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies or procedures, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673 (FORD).

Away from home

If you own a Ford or Mercury vehicle and are away from home when your vehicle needs service, or if you need more help than the authorized dealer could provide, after following the steps described above, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center to find an authorized dealer to help you.

In the United States:

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48121
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)
www.customersaskford.com

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

In Canada:
Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)
www.ford.ca

If you own a Lincoln vehicle and are away from home when your vehicle needs service, or if you need more help than the authorized dealer could provide, after following the steps described above, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center to find an authorized dealer to help you.

In the United States:
Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48121
1-800-521-4140
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)
www.customersaskford.com

In Canada:
Lincoln Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4
1-800-387-9333
www.lincolncanada.com

In order to help you service your Lincoln vehicle, please have the following information available when contacting the Lincoln Centre:

- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and the city where the authorized dealer is located
- The year and make of your vehicle
- The date of vehicle purchase
- The current odometer reading
- The vehicle identification number (VIN)

Additional Assistance

If you still have a complaint involving a warranty dispute, you may wish to contact the Better Business Bureau (BBB) AUTO LINE program (U.S. only).

In some states (in the U.S.) you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 miles (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR

2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR

3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. Experience has shown that our customers have been very successful in achieving satisfaction by following the three-step procedure outlined on the front page of the Warranty Guide. However, if your warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. Initially, the BBB will try to resolve your question or concern through mediation. Mediation is a process through which a representative of the BBB will contact the parties and explore options for settlement of your claim. If mediation is not successful, customers with eligible claims may participate in the BBB AUTO LINE arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing. You are not bound by the decision but may choose to accept it. If you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision then Ford must abide by the accepted decision as well. If the arbitrator has decided in your favor and you accept the decision, the BBB AUTO LINE program will contact you to ensure that Ford has complied with the decision in a timely manner. Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB.

To initiate a claim with the BBB AUTO LINE, you will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. You will then be mailed a Customer Claim Form that you will need to complete, provide proof of vehicle ownership, sign and return the Customer Claim Form to the BBB. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1–800–955–5100, or writing to:

BBB AUTO LINE
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800
Arlington, Virginia 22203–1833

Note: Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight-forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding both to you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685.

FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN

You can get more protection for your new car or light truck by purchasing Ford Extended Service Plan (Ford ESP) coverage. It provides the following:

- Benefits during the warranty period depending on the plan you purchase (such as: reimbursement for rentals; coverage for certain maintenance and wear items).
- Protection against covered repair costs after your Bumper-to-Bumper Warranty expires.

You may purchase Ford ESP from any participating authorized dealer. There are several plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations which can be tailored to fit your own driving needs. Ford ESP also offers reimbursement benefits for towing and rental coverage.

When you buy Ford ESP, you receive Peace-of-Mind protection throughout the United States and Canada, provided by a network of more than 4,600 participating authorized dealers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If you did not take advantage of the Ford Extended Service Plan at the time of purchasing your vehicle, you may still be eligible. Since this information is subject to change, please ask your authorized dealer for complete details about Ford Extended Service Plan coverage options, or visit the Ford ESP website at www.ford-esp.com.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Central America, the Caribbean, or the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, write or call:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (313) 594-4857
FAX: (313) 390-0804

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate outside of the U.S. or Canada, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations.

Customers in the U.S. should call 1–800–392–3673.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
P.O. Box 07150
Detroit, Michigan 48207

Or call:

For a free publication catalog, order toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website: www.helminc.com.

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Obtaining a French owner's guide

French Owner's Guides can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by writing to:

Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
Service Publications CHQ202
The Canadian Road
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, ON, Canada
L6J 5E4

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1–800–424–9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov;* or write to:

Administrator
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast
Washington, D.C. 20590

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1–800–333–0510.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning

WASHING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A), which is available from your authorized dealer.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Always use a clean sponge or car wash mitt with plenty of water for best results.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- It is especially important to wash the vehicle regularly during the winter months, as dirt and road salt are difficult to remove and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle’s paintwork and trim over time. Use Bug and Tar Remove (ZC-42) which is available from your authorized dealer.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.**
- **If your vehicle is equipped with running boards, do not use rubber, plastic and vinyl protectant products on the running board surface, as the area may become slippery.**

Exterior chrome

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- Use Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15), available from your authorized dealer. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- **Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- After polishing chrome bumpers, apply a coating of Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), available from your authorized dealer, or an equivalent quality product to help protect from environmental effects.

WAXING

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Do not use waxes that contain abrasives; use Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), which is available from your authorized dealer, or an equivalent quality product.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will "gray" or stain the parts over time.

PAINT CHIPS

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver's door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

ALUMINUM WHEELS AND WHEEL COVERS

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clearcoat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A), which is available from your authorized dealer. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Chemical-strength cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clearcoat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), available from your authorized dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

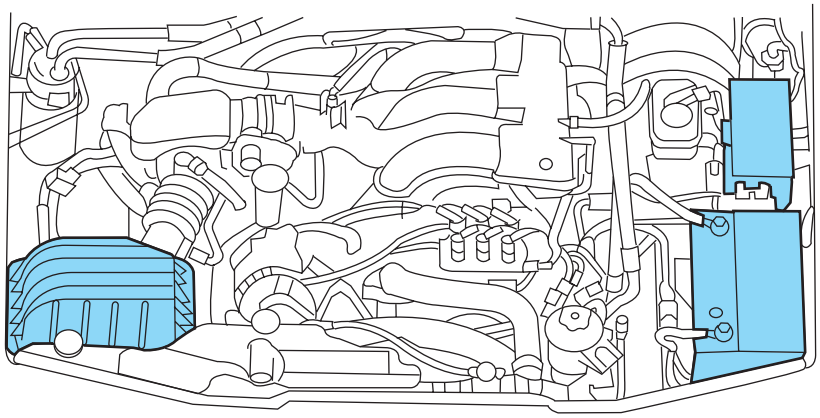
Cleaning

ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

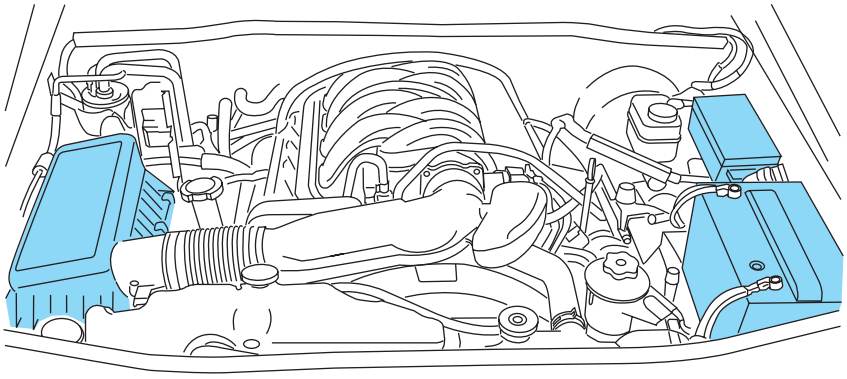
- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo (CXC-66-A).
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.

4.0L SOHC V6 ENGINE



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4.6L V8 ENGINE



PLASTIC (NON-PAINTED) EXTERIOR PARTS

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts. These products are available from your authorized dealer.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42).
- For plastic headlamp lenses, use Motorcraft Ultra Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23).

WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windshield, rear and side windows and the wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may be the cause. These may include hot wax treatments used by commercial car washes, water repellent coatings, tree sap, or other organic contamination; these contaminants may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windshield, rear windows and side windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23), available from your authorized dealer.
- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (ZC-32-A), available from your authorized dealer. This washer fluid contains

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

special solution in addition to alcohol which helps to remove the hot wax deposited on the wiper blade and windshield from automated car wash facilities. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.

- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

If you cannot remove those streaks after cleaning with the glass cleaner or if the wipers chatter and move in a jerky motion, clean the outer surface of the windshield and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaning solution. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.

Do not use sharp objects, such as a razor blade, to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals, as it may cause damage to the rear window defroster's heated grid lines.

INSTRUMENT PANEL/INTERIOR TRIM AND CLUSTER LENS

Clean the instrument panel, interior trim areas and cluster lens with a clean and damp white cotton cloth, then with a clean and dry white cotton cloth; you may also use Motorcraft Dash & Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-38-A) on the instrument panel and interior trim areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.
- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.

Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, white, cotton cloth.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Apply Motorcraft Deluxe Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-11-A) [In Canada use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (CXC-101)] to the wiped area and spread around evenly.

3. Apply more Motorcraft cleaner to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area–allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.

4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.

5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

INTERIOR

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54).
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14). In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (CXC-101).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side-airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

Your leather seating surfaces have a clear, protective coating over the leather.

- To clean, use a soft cloth with Motorcraft Deluxe Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-11-A). In Canada, use Motorcraft Vinyl Cleaner (CXC-93). Dry the area with a soft cloth.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- To help maintain its resiliency and color, use the Motorcraft Deluxe Leather Care Kit (ZC-11-D), available from your authorized dealer. In Canada, use Motorcraft Vinyl Cleaner (CXC-93) or an equivalent high–quality leather care product.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing of the clear, protective coating.

Note: In some instances, color or dye transfer can occur when wet clothing comes in contact with leather upholstery. If this occurs, the leather should be cleaned immediately to avoid permanent staining.

UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

FORD AND LINCOLN MERCURY CAR CARE PRODUCTS

Your Ford or Lincoln Mercury authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes. These quality products have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and appearance of your vehicle. Each product is made from high quality materials that meet or exceed rigid specifications. For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)

Motorcraft Car Wash (Canada only) (CXC-21)

Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)

Motorcraft Custom Clear Coat Polish (ZC-8-A)

Motorcraft Custom Vinyl Protectant (ZC-40-A)

Motorcraft Dash and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-38-A)

Motorcraft Deluxe Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (U.S. only) (ZC-11-A)

Motorcraft Leather Care Kit (U.S. only) (ZC-11-D)

Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)

Motorcraft Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)

Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)

Motorcraft Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)

Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Motorcraft Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)
Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A)
Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (U.S. only) (ZC-32-A)
Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)
Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)
Motorcraft Tire Clean and Shine (ZC-28)
Motorcraft Triple Clean (U.S. only) (ZC-13)
Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)
Motorcraft Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)
Motorcraft Wash and Wax (Canada only) (CXC-95)
Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING YOUR VEHICLE

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning (cigarettes) material away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the engine off

1. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

Working with the engine on

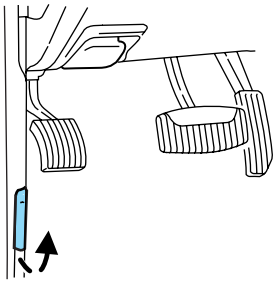
1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Block the wheels.

To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

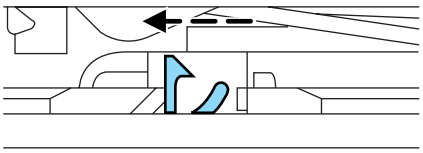
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

OPENING THE HOOD

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the bottom left corner of the instrument panel.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle and release the auxiliary latch that is located under the front center of the hood.

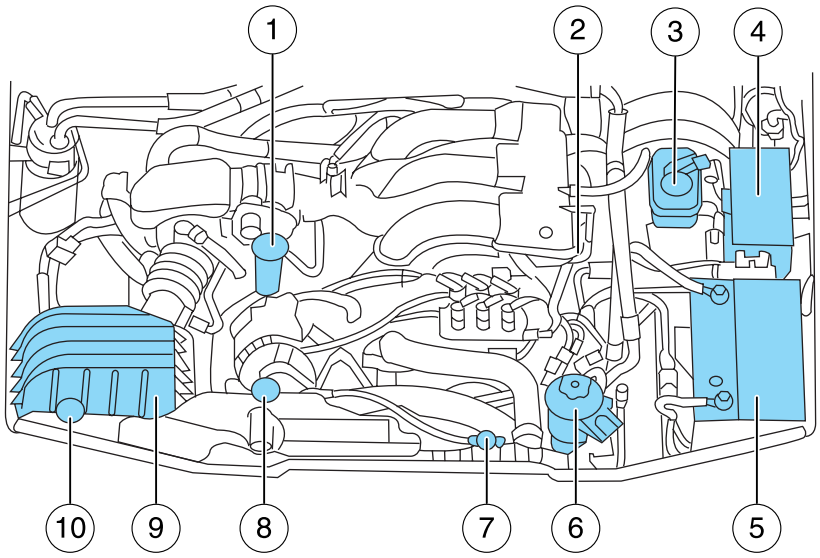


3. Lift the hood.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

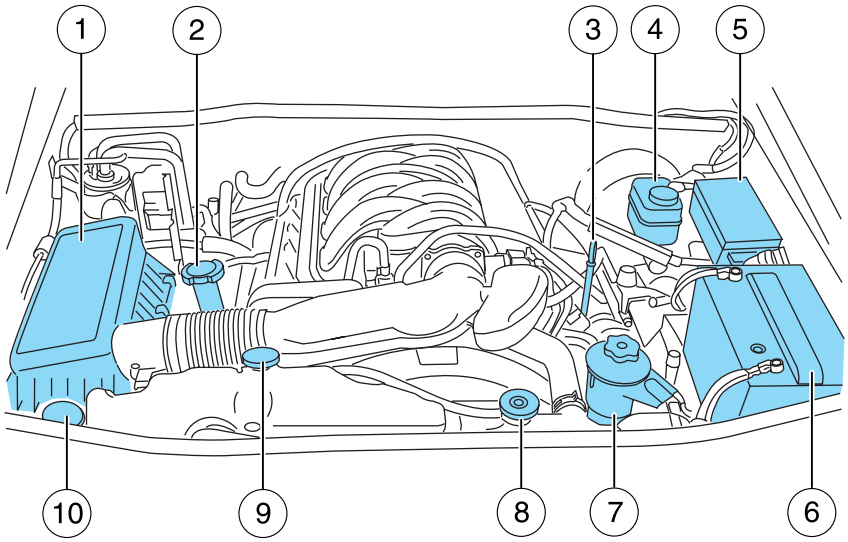
4.0L SOHC V6 engine



1. Engine oil filler cap
2. Engine oil dipstick (out of view)
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Power distribution box
5. Battery
6. Power steering fluid reservoir
7. Radiator cap
8. Engine coolant reservoir
9. Air filter assembly
10. Washer fluid reservoir

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4.6L V8 engine

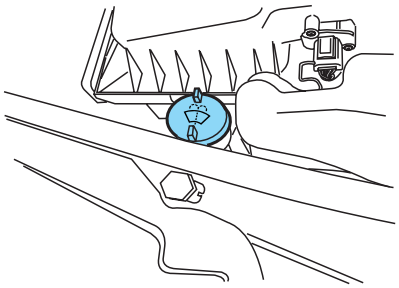


1. Air filter assembly
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Engine oil dipstick
4. Brake fluid reservoir
5. Power distribution box
6. Battery
7. Power steering fluid reservoir
8. Radiator cap
9. Engine coolant reservoir
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. In very cold weather, do not fill the reservoir completely.



Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specification WSB-M8B16–A2. Do not use any special washer fluid such as windshield water repellent type fluid or bug wash. They may cause squeaking, chatter noise, streaking and smearing. Refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40° F (4.5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

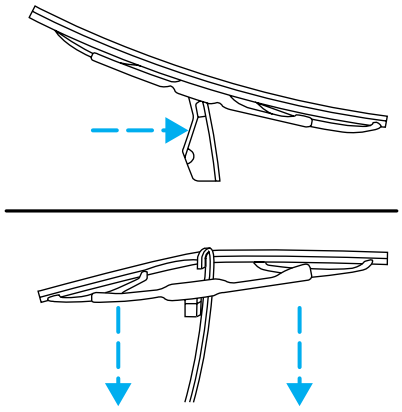
Do not put washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir. Washer fluid placed in the cooling system may harm engine and cooling system components.

Checking and adding washer fluid for the liftgate

Washer fluid for the liftgate is supplied by the same reservoir as the windshield.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES



1. Pull the wiper arm away from the vehicle. Turn the blade at an angle from the wiper arm. Push the lock pin manually to release the blade and pull the wiper blade down toward the windshield to remove it from the arm.

2. Attach the new wiper to the wiper arm and press it into place until a click is heard.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield, refer to *Windows and wiper blades* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

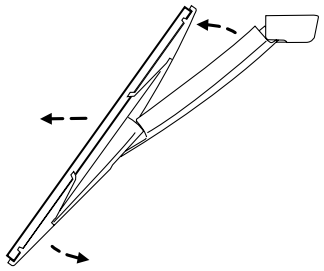
Changing the rear window wiper blade

To replace the rear wiper blade:

1. Pull the wiper arm as far away from the glass as possible. Do not use excessive force because it can break the wiper arm. Hold it there until the next step.

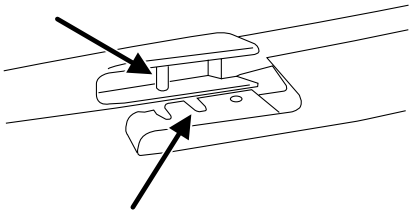
2. Grasp the wiper blade and rotate it away from the wiper arm using moderate force until it disengages from the wiper arm.

3. Once the wiper blade is loose, slide it away form the wiper arm.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. To attach the new wiper to the wiper arm, align the cross pin and keyway (denoted with the arrows) and firmly press the wiper blade into the wiper arm until an audible snap is heard.



ENGINE OIL

Checking the engine oil

Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for checking the engine oil.

1. Make sure the vehicle is on level ground.

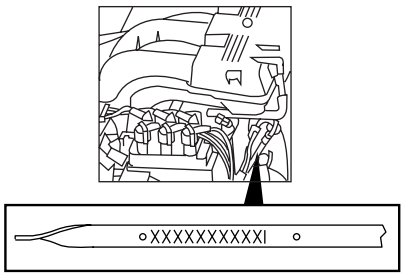
2. Turn the engine off and wait a few minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

3. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park).

4. Open the hood. Protect yourself from engine heat.

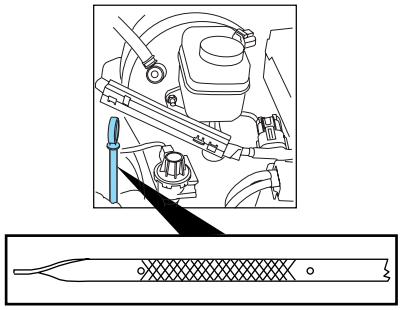
5. Locate and carefully remove the engine oil level dipstick.

- 4.0L V6 engine



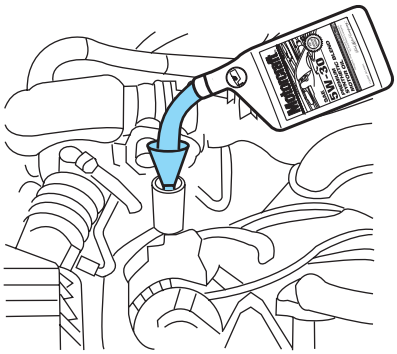
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- 4.6L V8 engine



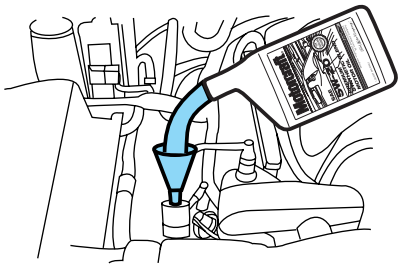
6. Wipe the dipstick clean. Insert the dipstick fully, then remove it again.

- If the oil level is **between the lower and upper holes,** the oil level is acceptable, **DO NOT ADD OIL.**
- If the oil level is below the lower hole, add enough oil to raise the level within the lower and upper holes.
- 4.0L V6 engine



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- 4.6L V8 engine



- Oil levels above the upper hole may cause engine damage. Some oil must be removed from the engine by an authorized dealer.

7. Put the dipstick back in and ensure it is fully seated.

Adding engine oil

1. Check the engine oil. For instructions, refer to *Checking the engine oil* in this chapter.

2. If the engine oil level is not within the normal range, add only certified engine oil of the recommended viscosity. Remove the engine oil filler cap and use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.

3. Recheck the engine oil level. Make sure the oil level is not above the upper hole on the engine oil level dipstick.

4. Install the dipstick and ensure it is fully seated.

5. Fully install the engine oil filler cap by turning the filler cap clockwise until three clicks can be heard.

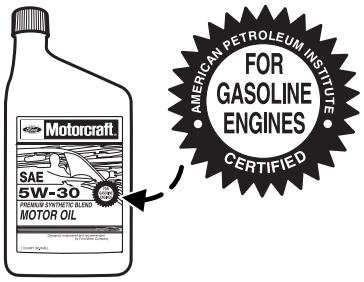
To avoid possible oil loss, DO NOT operate the vehicle with the engine oil level dipstick and/or the engine oil filler cap removed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Oil Recommendations

4.0L V6 Engine

Look for this certification trademark.



Use SAE 5W-30 engine oil

Only use oils “Certified For Gasoline Engines” by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

To protect your engine’s warranty use Motorcraft SAE 5W-30 or an equivalent SAE 5W-30 oil meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C929-A.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives, cleaners or other engine treatments. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford warranty.

Change your engine oil according to the appropriate schedule listed in the *scheduled maintenance information.*

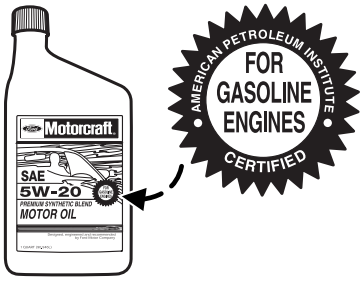
Ford production and aftermarket (Motorcraft) oil filters are designed for added engine protection and long life. If a replacement oil filter is used that does not meet Ford material and design specifications, start-up engine noises or knock may be experienced.

It is recommended you use the appropriate Motorcraft oil filter or another with equivalent performance for your engine application.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4.6L 3V V8 Engine

Look for this certification trademark.



Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil

Only use oils "Certified For Gasoline Engines" by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

To protect your engine's warranty use Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 or an equivalent SAE 5W-20 oil meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A. **SAE 5W-20 oil provides optimum fuel economy and durability performance meeting all requirements for your vehicle's engine**.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives, cleaners or other engine treatments. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford warranty.

Change your engine oil according to the appropriate schedule listed in the *scheduled maintenance information.*

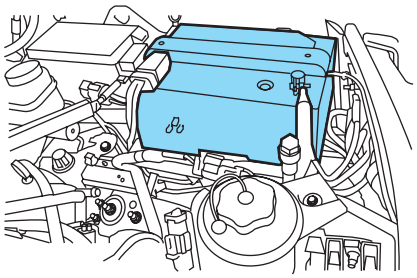
Ford production and aftermarket (Motorcraft) oil filters are designed for added engine protection and long life. If a replacement oil filter is used that does not meet Ford material and design specifications, start-up engine noises or knock may be experienced.

It is recommended you use the appropriate Motorcraft oil filter or another with equivalent performance for your engine application.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

BATTERY

Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.



If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time. This will minimize the discharge of your battery during storage.

Note: Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Put the gearshift lever in P (Park), turn off all accessories and start the engine.
3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
6. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.

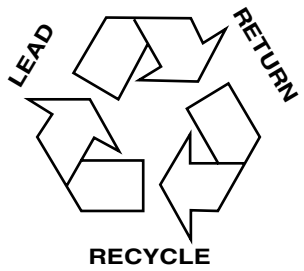
- The vehicle may need to be driven to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.
- **If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.**

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, the transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. As a result of this, the transmission may shift firmly. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation to its optimum shift feel.

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and the preset radio stations must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.



ENGINE COOLANT

Checking engine coolant

The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the intervals listed in *scheduled maintenance information.* The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and distilled water, which equates to a freeze point of -34°F (-36°C). Coolant concentration testing is possible with a hydrometer or antifreeze tester (such as the Rotunda Battery and Antifreeze Tester, 014–R1060). The level of coolant should be maintained at the "FULL COLD" level in the coolant reservoir. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

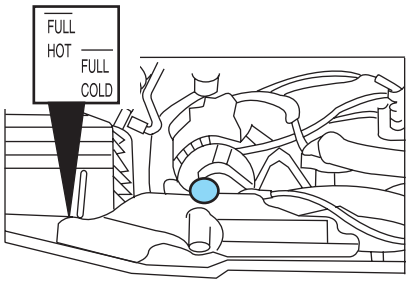
Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 engine coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above 60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50–50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

- **Freeze protection down to -34°F (-36°C).**
- **Boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).**
- **Protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **Enables calibrated gauges to work properly.**

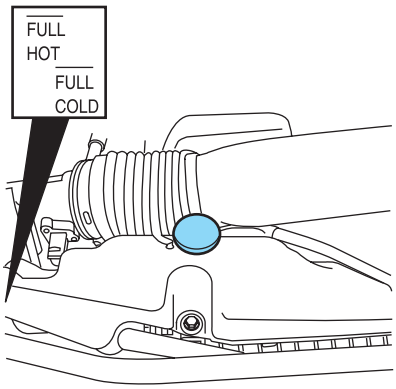
When the engine is cold, check the level of the engine coolant in the reservoir.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- 4.0L V6 engine



- 4.6L V8 engine



- The engine coolant should be at the “FULL COLD” level or within the “COLD FILL RANGE” as listed on the engine coolant reservoir (depending upon application).
- Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for service interval schedules.
- Be sure to read and understand *Precautions when servicing your vehicle* in this chapter.

If the engine coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If the reservoir is low or empty, add engine coolant to the reservoir. Refer to *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant, antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adding engine coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water. Add the mixture to the coolant reservoir, **when the engine is cool,** until the appropriate fill level is obtained.

Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.

Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

- **Add Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant or equivalent meeting Ford specification WSS-M97B51-A1.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

Note: Use of Motorcraft Cooling System Stop Leak Pellets or an equivalent product meeting Ford specification WSS-M99B37-B6, may darken the color of Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant from yellow to golden tan.

- **Do not add/mix an orange-colored, extended life coolant such as Motorcraft Specialty Orange Engine Coolant, meeting Ford specification WSS-M97B44-D, or DEX-COOL® brand with the factory-filled coolant.** Mixing Motorcraft Specialty Orange Engine Coolant or any orange-colored extended life product such as DEX-COOL® brand with your factory filled coolant can result in degraded corrosion protection.
- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- **Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- **Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant.** These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

For vehicles with overflow coolant systems with a non-pressurized cap on the coolant recovery system, add coolant to the coolant recovery reservoir when the engine is cool. Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the "FULL COLD" level. For all other vehicles which have a coolant degas system with a pressurized cap, or if it is necessary to remove the coolant pressure relief cap on the radiator of a vehicle with an overflow system, follow these steps to add engine coolant.

To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the cooling system by following these steps:

1. Before you begin, turn the engine off and let it cool.

2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the coolant pressure relief cap on the coolant reservoir (a translucent plastic bottle). Slowly turn cap counterclockwise (left) until pressure begins to release.

3. Step back while the pressure releases.

4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.

5. Fill the coolant reservoir slowly with the proper coolant mixture, to within the "COLD FILL RANGE" or the "FULL COLD" level on the reservoir. If you removed the radiator cap in an overflow system, fill the radiator until the coolant is visible and radiator is almost full.

6. Replace the cap. Turn until tightly installed. Cap must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss.

After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration (refer to *Checking engine coolant*). If the concentration is not 50/50 (protection to –34°F/–36°C), drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough 50/50 concentration of engine coolant and distilled water to bring the liquid level to the proper level.

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of engine coolant per month, have your authorized dealer check the engine cooling system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

Recycled engine coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled engine coolant in vehicles originally equipped with Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Coolant refill capacity

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

Fill your engine coolant reservoir as outlined in *Adding engine coolant* in this section.

Severe climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates (less than –34°F [–36°C]):

- **It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.**
- **NEVER increase the coolant concentration above 60%.**
- **Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate freeze protection at the temperatures in which you drive in the winter months.**

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- **It is still necessary to maintain the coolant concentration above 40%.**
- **NEVER decrease the coolant concentration below 40%.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate protection at the temperatures in which you drive.**

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

What you should know about fail-safe cooling (4.6L V8 engine only)

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The "fail-safe" distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

Fail-safe cooling and engine oil overheat mode (4.6L V8 only)

If the engine coolant and/or engine oil overheat, the vehicle's fail-safe modes will reduce engine power to limit engine damage, even with a total loss of coolant. The vehicle's range and/or speed will be reduced, depending on vehicle load, terrain, and outside temperatures.

The instrument cluster provides warnings for each mode.

- **Fail-Safe Cooling Mode:** The (Service engine soon), (Engine oil pressure), and (Engine coolant temperature) indicators will be on.

  Along with these warning indicators, the engine coolant temperature gauge will read in the Hot (H) area.

  If the engine coolant reaches even hotter temperatures, fail-safe cooling mode limits engine power more and disables air conditioning. The engine will switch to alternating cylinder operation to help cool the engine. The engine will run rough in this mode.

  If continued operation increases the engine coolant temperature to a critical range, the engine will shut down. Steering and braking effort will increase. Once engine coolant temperature cools, the engine can be restarted.
- **Engine Oil Overheat Mode:** The (Engine coolant temperature) indicator will be on. The instrument cluster has no separate oil temperature indicator.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Along with the (Engine coolant temperature) indicator, the engine coolant temperature gauge will read in the Hot (H) area.

Oil overheat can be triggered in severe driving conditions, such as towing heavy loads over mountainous terrain in extreme hot temperatures. As oil temperature increases, engine and vehicle speed will be limited. The transmission will also shift differently.

When the engine oil has cooled, the vehicle will perform normally.

When fail-safe cooling mode is activated

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage, therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.

2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to an authorized dealer.

3. If this is not possible, wait approximately 15 minutes for the engine to cool.

4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low. Look for coolant leakage in the engine compartment and under the vehicle.

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

5. Restart the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

FUEL FILTER

For fuel filter replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the fuel filter.

Replace the fuel filter with an authorized Motorcraft part. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel system if an authorized Motorcraft fuel filter is not used.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT AUTOMOTIVE FUELS

Important safety precautions

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler door (Easy Fuel™ "no cap" fuel system), wait until it stops before refueling. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.

If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in serious personal injury.

Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

Gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.

The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

Refueling

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island;
- Turn off your engine when you are refueling;
- Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle;
- Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel;
- Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places;
- Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

Fuel filler cap (if equipped)

Your fuel tank filler cap may have an indexed design with a 1/4 turn on/off feature.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.

2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise 1/4 of a turn to unscrew the cap.

3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.

4. Reinstall the cap on the filler pipe and turn it clockwise until at least one click is heard.

If the check fuel cap light or a “check fuel cap” message comes on, the fuel filler cap may not be properly installed. The light or message can come on after several driving events after you’ve refueled your vehicle.

At the next opportunity, safely pull off of the road, remove the fuel filler cap, align the cap properly and reinstall it. The check fuel cap light or “check fuel cap” message may not reset immediately; it may take several driving cycles for the check fuel cap light or “check fuel cap” message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city and highway driving.

Continuing to drive with the check fuel cap light or “check fuel cap” message on may cause the light to turn on as well.

If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford, Motorcraft or other certified fuel filler cap is not used.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The fuel system may be under pressure. Remove fuel filler cap slowly. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.

If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in personal injury.

Easy Fuel™ "no cap" fuel system (if equipped)

Your fuel tank may be equipped with an Easy Fuel™ "no cap" fuel filler system. This allows you to simply open the fuel filler door and insert the fuel filler nozzle into the fuel system. The Easy Fuel™ system is self-sealing and protected against dust, dirt, water and snow/ice.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.

2. Open the fuel filler door.

3. Slowly insert the fuel filler nozzle fully into the fuel system. Pump fuel as normal.

4. After you are done pumping fuel, slowly remove the fuel filler nozzle—allow about five seconds after pumping fuel before removing the fuel filler nozzle. This allows residual fuel to drain back into the fuel tank and not spill onto the vehicle.

If the Check Fuel Fill Inlet lamp or Check Fuel Fill Inlet message comes on, the fuel fill inlet may not have properly closed. The inlet may have stuck open or debris may be preventing the inlet from fully closing. At the next opportunity, safely pull off the road, turn off the engine, open the fuel filler door and remove any visible debris from the fuel fill opening. Insert either the fuel fill nozzle or the fuel fill funnel provided with the vehicle several times to dislodge any debris and/or allow the inlet to close properly. If this action corrects the problem, the Check Fuel Fill Inlet lamp or Check Fuel Fill Inlet message may not reset immediately. It may take several driving cycles for the Check Fuel Fill Inlet lamp or Check Fuel Fill Inlet message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city/highway driving. Continuing to drive with the Check Fuel Fill Inlet lamp or Check Fuel Fill Inlet message on may cause the Service Engine Soon lamp to turn on as well.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The fuel system may be under pressure. Insert the fuel filler nozzle slowly; otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.

FORD RECOMMENDS BP

bp

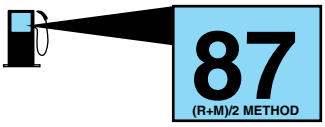
Choosing the right fuel

Use only UNLEADED fuel or UNLEADED fuel blended with a maximum of 10% ethanol. Your vehicle was not designed to run on E85 fuels that are blended with a maximum of 85% ethanol. The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law and could damage your vehicle. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can damage critical fuel system components.

Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel or fuel additives with metallic compounds, including manganese-based additives. Studies indicate that these additives can cause your vehicle's emission control system to deteriorate more rapidly.

Repairs to correct the effects of using a fuel for which your vehicle was not designed may not be covered by your warranty.

Octane recommendations



Your vehicle is designed to use "Regular" unleaded gasoline with pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87. We do not recommend the use of gasolines labeled as "Regular" that are sold with octane ratings of 86 or lower in high altitude areas.

Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuel quality

If you are experiencing starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems, try a different brand of unleaded gasoline. “Premium” unleaded gasoline is not recommended for vehicles designed to use “Regular” unleaded gasoline because it may cause these problems to become more pronounced. If the problems persist, see your authorized dealer.

Do not add aftermarket fuel additive products to your fuel tank. It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket products to your fuel tank if you continue to use high quality fuel of the recommended octane rating. These products have not been approved for your engine and could cause damage to the fuel system. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

Many of the world’s automakers approved the World-Wide Fuel Charter that recommends gasoline specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter.

Cleaner air

Ford endorses the use of reformulated “cleaner-burning” gasolines to improve air quality, per the recommendations in the *Choosing the Right Fuel* section.

Running out of fuel

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from OFF to ON several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8L) may be required.
- The *Service engine soon* indicator may come on. For more information on the “service engine soon” indicator, refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Refilling with a portable fuel container

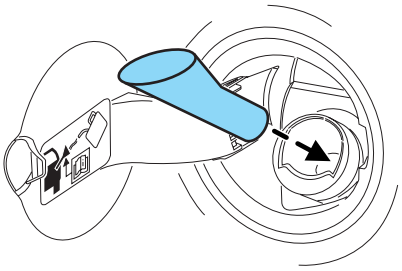
If your vehicle is equipped with an Easy Fuel™ “no cap” fuel system, you will need to use the following directions when filling from a portable fuel container:

Do not insert the nozzle of portable fuel containers or aftermarket funnels into the Easy Fuel™ system. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

Do not try to pry open or push open the Easy Fuel™ system with foreign objects. This could damage the fuel system and its seal and cause injury to you or others.

When filling the vehicle’s fuel tank from a portable fuel container, you will need to use the included funnel.

1. Locate the white plastic funnel. It is attached to the underside of the spare tire cover or is included with the tire changing tools.



2. Slowly insert the funnel into the Easy Fuel™ system.

3. Fill the vehicle with fuel from the portable fuel container.

4. When done, clean the funnel or properly dispose of it. Extra funnels can be purchased from your authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel. **Do not** use aftermarket funnels; they will not work with the Easy Fuel™ system and can damage it. The included funnel has been specially designed to work safely with your vehicle.

ESSENTIALS OF GOOD FUEL ECONOMY

Measuring techniques

Your best source of information about actual fuel economy is you, the driver. You must gather information as accurately and consistently as possible. Fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOT accurate as a measure of fuel economy. We do not recommend taking fuel economy measurements during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (engine break-in period). You will get a more accurate measurement after 2,000 miles–3,000 miles (3,000 km–5,000 km).

Filling the tank

The advertised fuel capacity of the fuel tank on your vehicle is equal to the rated refill capacity of the fuel tank as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section of this chapter.

The advertised capacity is the amount of the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the small amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the engine/ignition switch to the off position prior to refueling, an error in the reading will result if the engine is left running.
- Use the same filling rate setting (low — medium — high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.
- Always use fuel with the recommended octane rating.
- Use a known quality gasoline, preferably a national brand.
- Use the same side of the same pump and have the vehicle facing the same direction each time you fill up.
- Have the vehicle loading and distribution the same every time.

Your results will be most accurate if your filling method is consistent.

Calculating fuel economy

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading (in miles or kilometers).
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added (in gallons or liters).
3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.

5. Follow one of the simple calculations in order to determine fuel economy:

Calculation 1: **Divide total miles traveled by total gallons used.**

Calculation 2: **Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by total kilometers traveled.**

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This will provide an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures give lower fuel economy.

Driving style — good driving and fuel economy habits

Give consideration to the lists that follow and you may be able to change a number of variables and improve your fuel economy.

Habits

- Smooth, moderate operation can yield up to 10% savings in fuel.
- Steady speeds without stopping will usually give the best fuel economy.
- Idling for long periods of time (greater than one minute) may waste fuel.
- Anticipate stopping; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Sudden or hard accelerations may reduce fuel economy.
- Slow down gradually.
- Driving at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Revving the engine before turning it off may reduce fuel economy.
- Using the air conditioner or defroster may reduce fuel economy.
- You may want to turn off the speed control in hilly terrain if unnecessary shifting between the top gears occurs. Unnecessary shifting of this type could result in reduced fuel economy.
- Warming up a vehicle on cold mornings is not required and may reduce fuel economy.
- Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving may reduce fuel economy.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.

Maintenance

- Keep tires properly inflated and use only recommended size.
- Operating a vehicle with the wheels out of alignment will reduce fuel economy.
- Use recommended engine oil. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance items. Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and owner maintenance checks found in *scheduled maintenance information.*

Conditions

- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Carrying unnecessary weight may reduce fuel economy (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example; bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski/luggage racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 km) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.
- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Four-wheel-drive operation (if equipped) is less fuel efficient than two-wheel-drive operation.
- Close windows for high speed driving.

EPA window sticker

Every new vehicle should have the EPA window sticker. Contact your authorized dealer if the window sticker is not supplied with your vehicle. The EPA window sticker should be your guide for the fuel economy comparisons with other vehicles.

It is important to note the box in the lower left corner of the window sticker. These numbers represent the Range of MPG (L/100 km) expected on the vehicle under optimum conditions. Your fuel economy may vary depending upon the method of operation and conditions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Illumination of the *Service engine soon* indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete emission warranty information.

On board diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle. When the *Service engine soon* indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the *Service engine soon* indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.

2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.

3. The fuel cap may not have been securely tightened. See *Fuel filler cap* in this chapter. If you have the Easy Fuel™ "no cap" fuel system, the fuel fill inlet may not have been properly closed. See *Easy Fuel™ "no cap fuel system"* in this chapter.

4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly closing the fuel fill inlet or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the *Service engine soon* indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the *Service engine soon* indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the *Service engine soon* indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the *Service engine soon* indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.

If the *Service engine soon* indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. Refer to the On board diagnostics (OBD-II) description in this chapter.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the ON position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the *Service engine soon* indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the *Service engine soon* indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

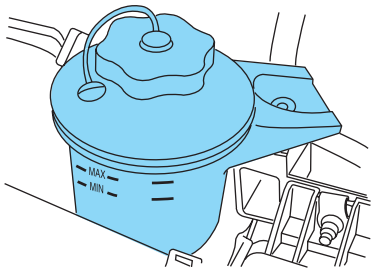
15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.

POWER STEERING FLUID

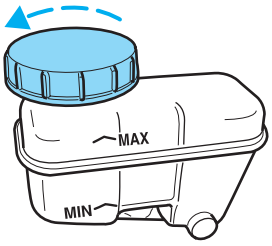
Check the power steering fluid. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the service interval schedules.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



1. Start the engine and let it run until it reaches normal operating temperature (the engine coolant temperature gauge indicator will be near the center of the normal area between H and C).
2. While the engine idles, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.
3. Turn the engine off.
4. Check the fluid level in the reservoir.
5. The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX lines. Do not add fluid if the level is in this range.
6. If the fluid is low, add fluid in small amounts, continuously checking the level until it reaches the correct operating range. Be sure to put the cap back on the reservoir. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper fluid type.

BRAKE FLUID



The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced. Fluid levels between the “MIN” and “MAX” lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.

TRANSMISSION FLUID

Checking automatic transmission fluid

The automatic transmission does not have an underhood transmission fluid dipstick.

Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, (i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly) or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

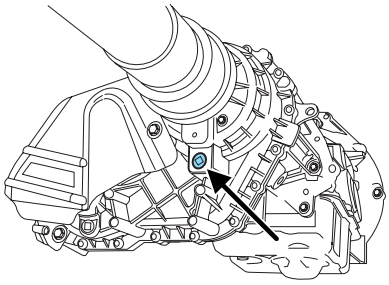
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Transmission fluid should be checked and, if required, fluid should be added by an authorized dealer.

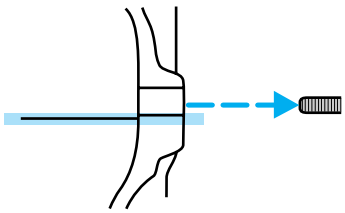
Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

TRANSFER CASE FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)

Turn off the power running boards, if equipped, before working under the vehicle, jacking or placing any object under the vehicle. Never place your hand between the extended running board and the vehicle. A moving running board may cause injury.



1. Clean the filler plug.
2. Remove the filler plug and inspect the fluid level.
3. Add only enough fluid through the filler opening so that the fluid level is at the bottom of the opening.



Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications. Refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

DRIVELINE UNIVERSAL JOINT AND SLIP YOKE

Turn off the power running boards, if equipped, before working under the vehicle, jacking or placing any object under the vehicle. Never place your hand between the extended running board and the vehicle. A moving running board may cause injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the original universal joints are replaced with universal joints equipped with grease fittings, lubrication will be necessary.

Note: Your vehicle's driveshaft is balanced. If undercoating the vehicle, protect the driveshaft and universal joints to prevent overspray of any undercoating material.

AIR FILTER

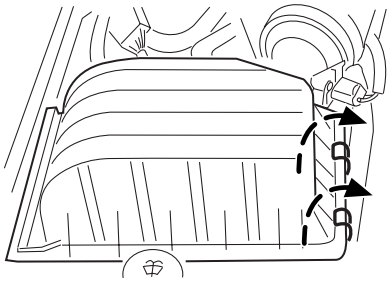
Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

When changing the air filter element, use only the Motorcraft air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* in this chapter.

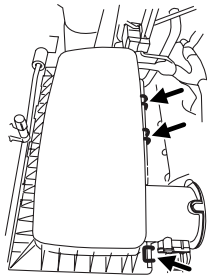
To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Changing the air filter element

- 4.0L Engine



- 4.6L Engine



1. Release the clamps that secure the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.

4. Wipe the air filter housing and cover clean to remove any dirt or debris and to ensure good sealing.

5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.

6. Replace the air filter housing cover and secure the clamps.

Note: Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

Component	4.0L SOHC V6 engine	4.6L 3V V8 engine
Air filter element	FA-1695	FA-1780
Fuel filter	FG-1083	FG-1083
Battery	BXT-65-650	BXT-65-650
Oil filter	FL-820S	FL-820S
PCV valve	[1]	
Spark plugs	[2]	

[1]The PCV valve is a critical emission component. It is one of the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* and is essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

For PCV valve replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the PCV valve.

Replace the PCV valve with one that meets Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as a Motorcraft or equivalent replacement part. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the emissions system if such a PCV valve is not used.

[2]For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.

Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

Item	Capacity	Ford Part Name or equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
Brake fluid	Between MIN and MAX on reservoir	Motorcraft High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-1-C / WSS-M6C62-A
Body hinges, latches, door striker plates and rotors, seat tracks, fuel filler door hinge and spring, hood latch, auxiliary latch, seat tracks	—	Multi-Purpose Grease	XG-4 or XL-5 / ESB-M1C93-B
Door weatherstrips	—	Silicone Spray Lubricant	XL-6 / ESR-M13P4-A
Lock cylinders	—	Motorcraft Penetrating and Lock Lubricant	XL-1 / None
Driveshaft, slip spline, universal joints Transfer case Front Output Slip Shaft (AWD & 4WD)	—	Premium Long-Life Grease	XG-1-C / ESA-M1C75-B

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Capacity	Ford Part Name or equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
Engine coolant 4.0L engine without auxiliary climate control	12.2 quarts (11.5L)	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant with bittering agent (yellow-colored)[1]	VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1
Engine coolant 4.0L engine with auxiliary climate control	13.9 quarts (13.2L)		
Engine coolant 4.6L engine without auxiliary climate control	13.9 quarts (13.2L)		
Engine coolant 4.6L engine with auxiliary climate control	15.7 quarts (14.9L)		
Cooling system stop leak pellets	—	Motorcraft Cooling System Stop Leak Pellets	VC-6 / WSS-M99B37-B6
Engine oil 4.0L engine	5.0 quarts (4.7L)	Motorcraft SAE 5W-30 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US) Motorcraft SAE 5W-30 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)[2]	XO-5W30-QSP (US) CXO-5W30-LSP12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C929-A with API Certification Mark

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Capacity	Ford Part Name or equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
Engine oil 4.6L engine	6.0 quarts (5.7L)	Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US) Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)[2]	XO-5W20-QSP (US) CXO-5W20-LSP12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C930-A with API Certification Mark
Automatic transmission (5R55S) fluid	12.4 quarts (11.7L) [3]	Motorcraft MERCON® V ATF[4]	XT-5-QM / MERCON® V
Automatic transmission (6R60) fluid	12.2 quarts (11.6L)[3]	Motorcraft MERCON® SP ATF[5]	XT-6-QSP / MERCON® SP
Rear axle fluid	3.5 pints (1.7L)	Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	X Y-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A
Front axle fluid (AWD & 4WD)	2.7 pints (1.3L)	Motorcraft SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-80W90-QL / WSP-M2C197-A
Power steering fluid	Fill between the MIN and MAX lines on reservoir	Motorcraft MERCON® V ATF	XT-5-QM / MERCON® V
Transfer case fluid (4WD)	1.5 quarts (1.4L)	Motorcraft Transfer Case Fluid	XL–12 / —
Transfer case fluid (AWD)	1.3 quarts (1.25L)	Motorcraft Transfer Case Fluid	XL–12 / —

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Capacity	Ford Part Name or equivalent	Ford Part Number / Ford Specification
Windshield washer fluid	4.2 quarts (4.0L)	Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate	ZC-32-A / WSB-M8B16- A2
Fuel tank	22.5 gallons (85.2L)	—	—

[1]Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

[2]Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only have the API Certification mark and meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C929-A (4.0L) or WSS-M2C930-A (4.6L).

[3]Indicates only approximate dry-fill capacity. Some applications may vary based on cooler size and if equipped with an in-tank cooler. The amount of transmission fluid and fluid level should be checked by a qualified technician.

[4]Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® V should only use MERCON® V fluid or fluid that is specified dual usage MERCON®/MERCON® V. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* to determine the correct service interval. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.

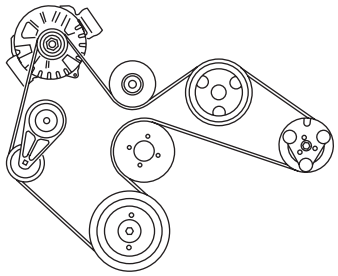
[5]Automatic transmissions that require MERCON® SP should only use MERCON® SP fluid. Use of a dual usage fluid in an automatic transmission requiring MERCON® SP may cause transmission damage. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* to determine the correct service interval. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

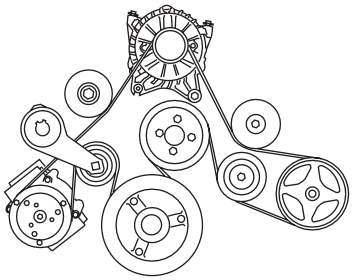
ENGINE DATA

Engine	4.0L SOHC V6 engine	4.6L 3V V8 engine
Cubic inches	245	281
Required fuel	87 octane	87 octane
Firing order	1-4-2-5-3-6	1-3-7-2-6-5-4-8
Ignition system	EDIS	Coil on Plug
Spark plug gap	0.052–0.056 inch (1.32–1.42 mm)	0.040–0.050 inch (1.02–1.27 mm)[1]
Compression ratio	9.7:1	9.8:1
[1]Spark plug gap is not adjustable		

Engine drivebelt routing



- 4.0L V6 Engine



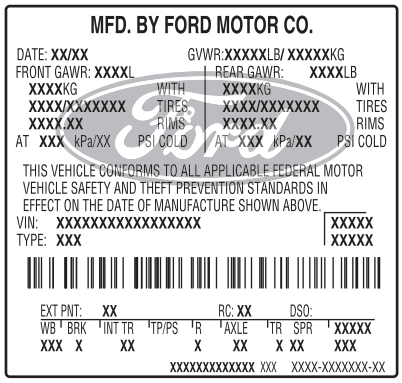
- 4.6L V8 Engine

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

IDENTIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

Safety Compliance Certification Label

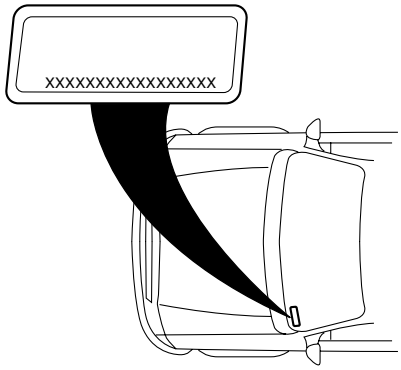
The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label is located on the structure (B-Pillar) by the trailing edge of the driver's door or the edge of the driver's door.



Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel.

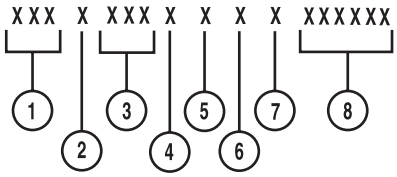
Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

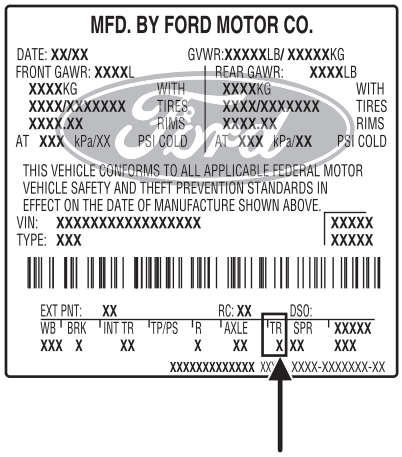
The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) contains the following information:

1. World manufacturer identifier
2. Brake system / Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) / Restraint System
3. Vehicle line, series, body type
4. Engine type
5. Check digit
6. Model year
7. Assembly plant
8. Production sequence number



TRANSMISSION/TRANSAXLE CODE DESIGNATIONS

You can find a transmission/transaxle code on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table tells you which transmission or transaxle each code represents.



Description	Code
Five-speed automatic (5R55S)	V
Six-speed automatic (6R60)	X

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Accessories

GENUINE FORD ACCESSORIES FOR YOUR VEHICLE

A wide selection of Genuine Ford Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local Ford or Ford of Canada dealer. These quality accessories have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and aerodynamic appearance of your vehicle. In addition, each accessory is made from high quality materials and meets or exceeds Ford's rigorous engineering and safety specifications. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Genuine Ford Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories. The accessories will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

The following is a list of several Genuine Ford Accessories. Not all accessories are available for all models. For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at: www.fordaccessoriesstore.com.

Exterior style

Aluminum fuel filler door

Bug shields

Deflectors

Running boards

Splash guards

Step Bars

Interior style

Electrochromatic compass/temperature interior mirrors

Floor mats

Lifestyle

Ash cup / smoker's package

Cargo organization and management

Neutral tow kit

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Roof rail cross bars

Trailer hitch drawbars, wiring harnesses and accessories

TripTunes™ Advanced portable audio connection

Peace of mind

Mobile-Ease™ hands-free communication system

Remote start

Vehicle security systems

Wheel locks

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by a qualified service technician.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the Amateur Radio Antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Index

A

Accessory delay 106
AdvanceTrac 270
Air cleaner filter 379–380
Air conditioning 84
Airbag supplemental restraint system 196, 205, 207
  and child safety seats 198
  description 196, 205, 207
  disposal 210
  driver airbag 198, 205, 208
  indicator light 205, 210
  operation 198, 205, 208
  passenger airbag 198, 205, 208
  side airbag 205
All Wheel Drive (AWD), driving off road 288
Ambulance packages 8
Antifreeze (see Engine coolant) 357
Anti-lock brake system (see Brakes) 268–269
Anti-theft system 164
Audio system (see Radio) 24, 28, 36
Automatic transmission
  driving an automatic overdrive 278, 281
  fluid, adding 377
  fluid, checking 377
  fluid, refill capacities 381
  fluid, specification 381
Auxiliary input jack (Line in) 44
Auxiliary power point 103
Axle
  lubricant specifications 381
  refill capacities 381

B

Battery 355
  acid, treating emergencies 355
  jumping a disabled battery 320
  maintenance-free 355
  replacement, specifications ...380
  servicing 355
Belt-Minder® 191
Booster seats 211
Brakes 268
  anti-lock 268–269
  anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light 269
  fluid, checking and adding 377
  fluid, refill capacities 381
  fluid, specifications 381
  lubricant specifications 381
  parking 269
  shift interlock 276

C

Calculating load 254
Capacities for refilling fluids 381
Cargo cover 147
Cargo management system 148
Cell phone use 9
Changing a tire 309
Child safety restraints 211
  child safety belts 211
Child safety seats 216
  attaching with tether straps ..220
  in front seat 217
  in rear seat 217

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Child safety seats - booster seats 211
Cleaning your vehicle
engine compartment 338
instrument panel 340
interior 341
plastic parts 339
washing 336
waxing 337
wheels 337
wiper blades 339
Climate control (see Air conditioning or Heating) 84
Clock adjust
6-CD in dash 38
AM/FM/CD 30
Compass, electronic 125
calibration 126
set zone adjustment 126, 140
Console 102–103
overhead 101
rear 103
Controls
power seat 169
steering column 111
Coolant
checking and adding 357
refill capacities 361, 381
specifications 381
Cruise control (see Speed control) 109
Customer Assistance 298
Ford Extended Service Plan 332
Getting assistance outside the U.S. and Canada 333
Getting roadside assistance ...298
Getting the service you need 328
Ordering additional owner's literature 334
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program 332

D

Daytime running lamps (see Lamps) 90
Defrost
rear window 87
Dipstick
automatic transmission fluid 377
engine oil 350
Driveline universal joint and slip yoke 378
Driving under special conditions 284, 291, 294
sand 293
snow and ice 295
through water 293, 297
Dual automatic temperature control (DATC) 84
DVD system 52

E

Electronic message center 119, 131
Emergencies, roadside
jump-starting 320
running out of fuel 320, 369
Emergency Flashers 300
Emission control system 374
Engine 385
cleaning 338
coolant 357

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

fail-safe cooling 362
idle speed control 355
lubrication specifications 381
refill capacities 381
service points 346–347
starting after a collision 300
Engine block heater 266
Engine oil 350
checking and adding 350
dipstick 350
filter, specifications 353, 380
recommendations 353
refill capacities 381
specifications 381
Event data recording 7
Exhaust fumes 266

F

Fail safe cooling 362
Family entertainment system 52
Floor mats 147
Fluid capacities 381
Foglamps 89
Four-Wheel Drive vehicles 287
driving off road 290
indicator light 287
preparing to drive your vehicle 275
Fuel 364
calculating fuel economy 120, 133, 370
cap 366–367
capacity 381
choosing the right fuel 368
comparisons with EPA fuel economy estimates 373
detergent in fuel 369
filler funnel 369
filling your vehicle with fuel 364, 366–367, 371
filter, specifications 363, 380
fuel pump shut-off switch 300
improving fuel economy 370
octane rating 368, 385
quality 369
running out of fuel 320, 369
safety information relating to automotive fuels 364
Fuses 301, 303

G

Garage door opener 102
Gas cap (see Fuel cap) 366–367
Gas mileage (see Fuel economy) 370
Gauges 20
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)
calculating 254
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)
calculating 254

H

Hazard flashers 300
Head restraints 167
Headlamps 89
aiming 91
bulb specifications 94
daytime running lights 90
flash to pass 90
high beam 90
turning on and off 89

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Heating
heating and air conditioning system 82, 84
Homelink wireless control system 115
Hood 345
How to get going 24

I

Ignition 263, 385
Illuminated visor mirror 100
Infant seats
(see Safety seats) 216
Inspection/maintenance (I/M) testing 375
Instrument panel
cleaning 340
cluster 12

J

Jack 309, 313
positioning 309, 315
storage 309, 313
Jump-starting your vehicle 320

K

Keyless entry system 162
autolock 151, 153
keypad 162
locking and unlocking doors ..163
programming entry code 162
Keys 165
positions of the ignition 263

L

Lamps
bulb replacement specifications chart 94
daytime running light 90
fog lamps 89
headlamps 89
interior lamps 93
Liftgate 149
remote release 158
Lights, warning and indicator 12
anti-lock brakes (ABS) 269
Load limits 248
Loading instructions 254
Locks
autolock 151, 153
childproof 156
doors 151
Lubricant specifications 381
Lug nuts 319
Luggage rack 150
Lumbar support, seats 169, 171

M

Message center 119, 131
english/metric button 122, 136
system check button 122, 135
warning messages 127, 142
Mirrors 106–107
automatic dimming rearview mirror 107
fold away 108
heated 108
side view mirrors (power) 107
Moon roof 114
Motorcraft parts 342, 363, 380

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Index

N

Navigation system 81

O

Octane rating 368
Oil (see Engine oil) 350

P

Parking brake 269
Parts (see Motorcraft parts) 380
Passenger Occupant Classification Sensor 182
Pedals (see Power adjustable foot pedals) 108
Power adjustable foot pedals ...108
Power deployable running boards 145
Power distribution box (see Fuses) 306
Power door locks 151
Power mirrors 107
Power point 103
Power steering 275
  fluid, checking and adding 376
  fluid, refill capacity 381
  fluid, specifications 381
Power Windows 104
Preparing to drive your vehicle 275

R

Radio 24, 28, 36
Rear seat entertainment system 52
Rear window defroster 87
Relays 301
Remote entry system 156–157
  illuminated entry 161
  locking/unlocking doors 157–158
  panic alarm 158
  replacing the batteries 159
Reverse sensing system 284
Roadside assistance 298
Roof rack 150

S

Safety Belt Maintenance 195
Safety belts (see Safety restraints) 181, 184–187, 189
Safety Canopy 205, 207–208
Safety defects, reporting ..334–335
Safety restraints 181, 184–189
  Belt-Minder® 191
  extension assembly 190
  for adults 185–187
  for children 210–211
  Occupant Classification Sensor 182
  safety belt maintenance 195
  warning light and chime 190–191
Safety seats for children 216
Safety Compliance Certification Label 386
Satellite Radio Information 49
Seats 167
  child safety seats 216

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

front seats 168
heated 172–173
memory seat 158, 171
SecuriLock passive anti-theft system 164
Setting the clock
AM/FM single CD 30
AM/FM/In-dash 6 CD 38
Snowplowing 8
Spark plugs, specifications 380, 385
Special notice
ambulance conversions 8
utility-type vehicles 8
Specification chart, lubricants 381
Speed control 109
Starting your vehicle 263–264, 266
jump starting 320
Steering wheel
controls 111
tilting 100
SYNC 81

T

Tilt steering wheel 100
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)
Driving 293
Roadside Emergencies 309
Tires, Wheels and Loading 243
Warning Displays 12, 127, 142
Tires 228–229, 309
alignment 236
care 232
changing 309, 315
checking the pressure 232
inflating 230
label 242
replacing 234, 315
rotating 236
safety practices 235
sidewall information 237
snow tires and chains 248
spare tire 310, 313–314
terminology 229
tire grades 229
treadwear 228, 233
Towing 255
recreational towing 261
trailer towing 255
wrecker 326
Transfer case
fluid checking 378
Transmission 276
brake-shift interlock (BSI) 276
fluid, checking and adding (automatic) 377
fluid, refill capacities 381
lubricant specifications 381
Turn signal 93

U

USB port 46

V

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 386
Vehicle loading 248
Ventilating your vehicle 266

W

Warning lights (see Lights) 12

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Index

Washer fluid 348
Water, Driving through 297
Windows 158
  power 104
  rear wiper/washer 100
Windshield
  defrosting 88
Windshield washer fluid and
wipers 99
  checking and adding fluid 348
  liftgate reservoir 348
  replacing wiper blades 349
Wrecker towing 326

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS